SIGHT READING
IN LATIN

BICE

SIGHT READING IN LATIN
FOR THE SECOND YEAR

BY

HIRAM H. BICE

HEAD OF THE DEPARTMENT OF LATIN, DE WITT CLINTON HIGH SCHOOL
NEW YORK CITY

GINN AND COMPANY
BOSTON · NEW YORK · CHICAGO · LONDON

PREFACE

The material for sight reading offered in this book may be used in two ways. Teachers who believe that the passage for translation should be placed before the pupil without preparation, will suggest for his use nothing more than the vocabulary of new words, the notes, and the rule of order accompanying each selection. Those who believe that some preparation should be made will find material suggested at the beginning of each exercise.

The grammatical references are to the common constructions found in the reading prescribed for the second year, and are illustrated in the selection which they introduce. The words which may be made the basis of a drill in inflections, as well as the words in the so-called "prescribed list," also occur in the passage. The latter are to be found in Professor Lodge's List. They include two classes: those which occur for the first time in Books III, IV, and V of the Gallic War, and those which have not occurred often or which may not have been met by the pupil in his reading of Books I and II up to the time when he sees the passage for sight work. The words of the first class are printed in heavy-faced type in the prescribed list, and in the text of the exercises when the lists are discontinued. The meanings should be given by the teacher. The rules relating to the arrangement of the words in the sentence are intended to guide the pupil in observing the grouping of words and their dependence.

The meaning of every word in the passage is given if not found in Lodge's List. Each exercise is complete in itself. Words are therefore repeated whenever necessary, even though they have appeared in previous exercises.

iii

The book contains rather more matter than is included in Books III and IV of the Gallic War. The first thirty exercises are taken from Eutropius, Aulus Gellius, Pliny, Cicero, and Livy. In some cases needed modifications have been made in the Latin, especially in the Livy.

The other exercises are taken from Nepos's lives of Hannibal and Hamilcar, from Cæsar's Civil War, and from Books III to VII, inclusive, of the Gallic War. In every case the attempt has been made to have the Latin tell a complete episode or story in a series of exercises. Where chapters have been omitted, a résumé of the contents is given in English.

CONTENTS

SUGGESTIONS FOR READING AT SIGHT

To understand a Latin sentence three things must be known: the forms, the relations of the words to one another, and their meanings. Each one of these must be noted and remembered while the sentence is passing under the eye of the reader.

First, then, read each sentence through slowly and thoughtfully, aloud if possible, trying to decide, when each word is reached, what its form is or may be. Do not, when reading the sentence for the first or even for the second time, let the eye jump from place to place, but take each word as it comes. Often the next word will make plain the form of the one before it. Sometimes the form will be perfectly plain when the end of the sentence is reached. Sometimes a word may be in any one of several forms, and the first reading may not show which one it is.

After having read the sentence through in this way one or more times with the forms chiefly in mind, read it once more, trying to see rather how the words are related to one another. Of course it is not possible to avoid doing this to some extent when the sentence is read the first time, but put the attention strongly on this point now. The meanings of many of the words will naturally rise in the mind while this is being done, and will help to show the connection between the parts of the different phrases; for the other readings will have made it clear that the sentence contains a number of groups of words, perhaps prepositional phrases, perhaps nouns limited by an adjective or by a genitive or an ablative, or perhaps clauses of one kind or another. By omitting these mentally in the reading, when they are discovered, the simple, independent statement, which is the real backbone of the sentence, will be found. After this, another reading will usually show the relation which these groups have to one another and to the main statement.

If the structure is still not clear, the pupil should read the sentence again and again, following the same method, till the light comes. Sometimes the difficulty arises from an ignorance of some principle of syntax or an uncertainty about a form, which must be cleared up by reference to the grammar; or it may come from the hazy memory of the meaning of a word.

After all this the meaning of the whole sentence should be fairly certain, and it should not be a difficult matter to put it into English. If the meaning of a word has escaped the memory, leave a blank for this word in translating the sentence, and often the translation will show what meaning the unknown word must have.

It may seem that this requires much time and is a slow way of getting at the meaning. It is true that for a while this will be so. But the mind must be trained to grasp the meaning of the sentence in the order in which the Roman author developed it in his own mind, and in the order in which he put it in writing. The emphasis in a sentence is lost if the sentence is not read and interpreted in the order in which it is written. This is the only method that leads to accuracy and rapidity in understanding the language; for the Romans were particular about the placing of words, and the study of arrangement, therefore, is of the utmost importance.

THE FORMATION OF WORDS

Many Latin words are made from other Latin words by adding to the stem certain syllables called suffixes.

Those which should be taught to the pupil are given below.

tor. This suffix is added to verb stems or roots to show the doer or the agent of the action, as

imperātor = **imperā** (stem of **imperō,** command) + **tor** = one who commands, a command*er*.

victor = **vic** (root of **vincō,** conquer) + **tor** = one who conquers, a conquer*or*, a vict*or*.

Observe the English equivalents of this suffix.

Occasionally the suffix appears as **sor,** as in **dēfēnsor,** for **dēfendtor.**

Explain the formation of the following:

    mercātor, explōrātor, speculātor, gubernātor, adiūtor.

iō, tiō, tus. These suffixes are added to verb stems or roots to form nouns which show an act or its result, as

legiō = **leg** (root of **legō,** choose, levy) + **iō** = the act or result of levying, a leg*ion*.

ōrātiō = **ōrā** (stem of **ōrō,** plead) + **tiō** = the act or result of pleading, a speech, ora*tion*.

conventus = **conven** (con, together, + **ven,** root of **veniō,** come) + **tus** = the act or the result of coming together or assembling, assembly, conven*tion*.

Observe the English equivalents of these suffixes.

Occasionally the suffix **tus** appears as **sus,** as in **cursus** (from **currō**) for **curtus.**

Explain the formation of the following:

coniūrātiō, mūnītiō, dēditiō, oppugnātiō, nāvigātiō, obsidiō, dēfēnsiō, occāsus, discessus, mōtus.

ia, tia, tās, tūs, tūdō. These suffixes are added to the stems of adjectives or nouns to form nouns.

The suffixes ia, tia, tās, tūdō, added to adjective stems, form abstract nouns denoting quality, as

potentia = potent (stem of potēns, able, from possum) + ia = ability.

iūstitia = iūsti (weakened stem of iūstus, fair, just) + tia = fairness, justice.

celeritās = celeri (stem of celer, swift) + tās = swiftness.

magnitūdō = magni (weakened stem of magnus, great) + tūdō = greatness, magnitude.

Observe the English equivalents of these suffixes.

Explain the formation of the following:

memoria, grātia, audācia, dīligentia, sententia, amīcitia, nōbilitās, lībertās, altitūdō, fortitūdō, multitūdō.

The suffixes ia, tās, tūs, added to noun stems, form nouns denoting a condition or a characteristic, as

mīlitia = mīlit (stem of mīles, soldier) + ia = military service.

cīvitās = cīvi (stem of cīvis, citizen) + tās = citizenship.

servitūs = servi (weakened stem of servus, slave) + tūs = slavery, servitude.

Observe the English equivalents of these suffixes.

Explain the formation of the following:

victōria, auctōritās, tempestās, virtūs, senectūs.

The meanings of words are often changed by prefixing syllables, usually prepositions, which have their original force as adverbs. The most common meanings of the following should be taught to the pupil:

ab (ā), ad, ante, circum, con, dē, dis-(dī-), ex (ē), in, in-, inter, ob, per, prae, prō, re(d)-, sub, trāns.

Determine the meaning of the prefix in the following:

absum, āvertō, addūcō, advertō, antepōnō, antecēdō, circumveniō, circumsistō, conveniō, cōnferō, dēiciō, dēcurrō, dispōnō, dīmittō, ēnūntiō, expellō, īnstō, īnsequor, incrēdibilis, inermis, intercēdō, interpōnō, oppugnō, occurrō, perdūcō, perspiciō, praestō, praemittō, prōiciō, prōcēdō, respiciō, renovō, redeō, suscipiō, trānseō, trādūcō.

NEW WORDS

The following list includes such words of Caesar, in Professor Lodge's Vocabulary for High School Latin, as do not occur in Books I and II of the Gallic War. With each is given the page and line where it first appears in this book. The meaning should be fixed in mind at the time when the word is first met.

GALLIA
ANTIQUA

ROMAN MILES

ENGLISH MILES

SIGHT READING IN LATIN

EXERCISE I

Grammar: A. 305; 419; 423; 530; 531, 2; 549. B. 250, 1; 227; 230; 181; 282, 2; 286, 2. G. 614; 409; 393; 336; 630; 586. H. 396; 489; 486; 417; 589; 598.

Inflection: agō; mōns; ūnus; quī.

Order of words: the normal order of the sentence is: (1) subject; (2) modifiers of subject; (3) modifiers of verb; (4) verb.

Prescribed list:

imperium	ferē	tum	vīcit
initium	ēgit	nātiōnēs	rēgnī
fīlius	recēpit	commōtīs	per
cīvitāte	cōnsiliō	iniūriam	imperāvērunt
nōmine	propter		

HOW ROMULUS, THE FOUNDER OF ROME, HELPED THE CITY TO GROW

Imperium Rōmānum[1] ā Rōmulō initium habet, quī[2] Reae Silviae, Vestālis virginis,[3] fīlius fuit. Is, octōdecim annōs[4] nātus, urbem parvam in Palātīnō[5] monte cōnstituit. Conditā cīvitāte, quam[6] ex nōmine suō Rōmam vocāvit, haec ferē ēgit.[7] Multitūdinem fīnitimōrum in cīvitātem[8] recēpit, centum[9] ex seniōribus lēgit, quōrum cōnsiliō omnia ageret, quōs senātōrēs nōmināvit propter senectūtem.[10] Tum, cum[11] uxōrēs ipse et populus suus nōn habērent, invītāvit[12] ad spectāculum[13] lūdōrum vīcīnas urbis Rōmae nātiōnēs, atque eārum[14] virginēs rapuit. Commōtīs bellīs propter raptārum[15] iniūriam, multās vīcīnās nātiōnēs vīcit. Annō[16]

rēgnī trīcēsimō septimō ad deōs trānsisse[17] crēditus est. Deinde Rōmae[18] per quīnōs diēs senātōrēs imperāvērunt et hīs rēgnantibus[19] annus ūnus complētus est. — EUTROPIUS, I

VOCABULARY

nāscor, nāscī, nātus, *be born*

urbs, urbis, f., *city*

condō, 3, didī, ditus, *found*

vocō, 1, *call* (vocal)

senex, senis, *old*

uxor, ōris, f., *wife*

lūdus, ī, m., *game*

vīcīnus, a, um, *neighboring* (vicinity)

rapiō, 3, uī, tus, *carry off*

trīcēsimus, a, um, *thirtieth*

deus, ī, m., *god*

crēdō, 3, didī, ditus, *believe*

deinde, *then*

quīnī, *five each*

NOTES

[1] **Rōmānum**: adjective formed from the noun **Rōma** by the suffix **ānus**, *belonging to*. [2] **quī**: in what respect does this pronoun agree with its antecedent? What word, then, is its antecedent? [3] **Vestālis virginis**: a priestess who kept the fire of Vesta. [4] **octōdecim annōs**: what do these words tell about **nātus**? [5] **Palātīnō**: one of the seven hills of Rome. [6] **quam**: relative pronoun. [7] **haec ferē ēgit**: *he did about as follows*. [8] **cīvitātem**: this word and **cīvitāte** above refer to Rome. [9] **centum**: indeclinable. **Senātōrēs** below shows that **virōs** is understood with **centum**. [10] **senectūtem**: derive the meaning of this word by connecting it with the stem of **senex**. What does **senātōrēs** really mean? [11] **cum**: causal. [12] **invītāvit**: infer the meaning from the English derivative. [13] **spectāculum**: see note on **invītāvit**. [14] **eārum**: refers to **nātiōnēs**. [15] **raptārum**: render by a demonstrative and a relative clause. [16] **annō**: compare this use of the word with that in **annōs** above. [17] **trānsisse**: **trāns** + **eō**. [18] **Rōmae**: locative. [19] **rēgnantibus**: from **rēgnō**. Think of **rēgnum** and **regō**.

This passage contains three examples of the ablative absolute. By what kind of clause should each be translated?

EXERCISE II

Grammar: A. 282; 286; 343; 362; 370; 419. B. 169, 1; 233, 3; 234; 198; 195; 187, I, III; 227. G. 320; 289; 362; 345; 347; 409. H. 393; 394; 440, 1; 424; 429; 489.

Inflection: augeō; mōs; minus (compare); hīc.

Order of words : the arrangement of the words in the sentence represents the order of the development of the thought in the mind of the writer.

Prescribed list :

creātus est	aliquā	fīliā	apud
quidem	successit	suscēpit	suprā
cōnsuētūdine	vīcit	contrā	mare
putābantur	superāvit	dīmicāvit	sextō
mēnsīs	post	cīvitātī	decimō

HOW NUMA POMPILIUS, TULLUS HOSTILIUS, AND ANCUS MARCIUS ENLARGED ROME

Posteā Numa Pompilius rēx[1] creātus est, quī bellum quidem nūllum gessit, sed nōn minus cīvitātī quam[2] Rōmulus prōfuit. Nam et lēgēs Rōmānīs mōrēsque cōnstituit, quī[3] cōnsuētūdine proeliōrum sēmibarbarī[4] putābantur, et annum dēscrīpsit, in decem mēnsīs prius sine aliquā computātiōne cōnfūsum,[5] et īnfīnīta Rōmae sacra ac templa cōnstituit. Huic successit[6] Tullus Hostīlius. Hīc bella gessit, Albānōs vīcit, quī ab urbe Rōmā duodecimō mīliāriō sunt, Vēientīs et Fīdēnātēs bellō superāvit, urbem auxit, adiectō Caeliō[7] monte. Post hunc Ancus Mārcius, Numae ex fīliā nepōs, suscēpit imperium. Contrā Latīnōs dīmicāvit, Aventīnum[7] montem cīvitātī adiēcit et Iāniculum, apud ōstium Tiberis cīvitātem suprā mare sextō decimō mīliāriō ab urbe Rōmā condidit. — Eutropius, I

VOCABULARY

prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, —, *be helpful*
lēx, lēgis, f., *law* (legal)
dēscrībō, 3, **scrīpsī, scrīptus,** *mark out*
computātiō, ōnis, f., *reckoning*
cōnfundō, 3, **fūdī, fūsus,** *confuse*
īnfīnītus, a, um, *without end* (infinite)
sacra, ōrum, n., *rites*
templum, ī, n., *temple*

urbs, urbis, f., *city*
mīliārium, mīliārī, n., *milestone* (mile)
adiciō, 3, **iēcī, iectus,** *add to*
nepōs, ōtis, m., *grandson*
ōstium, ōstī, n., *mouth*
condō, 3, **didī, ditus,** *found*

NOTES

[1] **rēx**: predicate nominative after **creātus est.**   [2] **quam**: take with **minus.**
[3] **quī**: refers to **Rōmānīs.**   [4] **sēmibarbarī**: the prefix **sēmi** means *half*, as in
"semicircle." For the case, see note on **rēx.**   [5] **cōnfūsum**: with what does
this participle agree?   [6] **huic successit**, etc.: *him succeeded Tullus Hos-
tilius.* **Huic** is emphatic.   [7] **Caeliō, Aventīnum**: two of the seven hills
of Rome.

Think of English words from **creātus, lēgēs, cōnstituit, contrā, mare,** and
other words in the passage.

EXERCISE III

Grammar: A. 346; 370; 419; 420; 423. B. 201; 187, III; 227, 2;
230. G. 367; 368; 347; 409; 410; 393. H. 440, 5; 429; 489, 1; 486.
   Inflection: ferō; pars; omnis; īdem.
   Order of words: adjectives and genitives, if emphatic, stand before
the nouns which they limit; if not emphatic, after their nouns.
   Prescribed list:

deinde	inīvit	ipse	fossās
accēpit	mūrōs	successerat	imperāvit
aedificāvit	octāvō	post	terrārum
īnstituit	imperī	suscēpit	dēlātīs
memoriam	occīsus est	quoque	fīliae

THE DEEDS OF TARQUINIUS PRISCUS AND SERVIUS
TULLIUS, KINGS OF ROME

Deinde rēgnum Tarquinius Prīscus accēpit. Hīc numerum
senātōrum[1] duplicāvit, circum[2] Rōmae aedificāvit, lūdōs Rōmānōs
īnstituit, quī ad nostram memoriam permanent.[3] Vīcit[4] īdem etiam
Sabīnōs et partem agrōrum urbis Rōmae territōriō adiūnxit,[5] prī-
musque triumphāns[6] urbem inīvit. Mūrōs fēcit et cloācās. Trī-
cēsimō octāvō imperī annō occīsus est per Ancī fīliōs,[7] rēgis eius
cui ipse successerat. Post hunc Servius Tullius suscēpit imperium.
Hīc quoque Sabīnōs vīcit, montīs[8] trīs, Quirīnālem, Vīminālem,

Ēsquilīnum, urbī adiūnxit, fossās circā mūrum dūxit. Prīmus
cēnsum omnium imperāvit, quī adhūc[9] per orbem terrārum incog-
nitus[10] erat. Sub eō Rōma omnibus in cēnsum dēlātīs habuit octō-
gintā tria mīlia cīvium Rōmānōrum cum iīs quī in agrīs erant.
Occīsus est quadrāgēsimō quīntō imperī annō scelere generī suī
Tarquinī, fīlī eius rēgis cui ipse successerat, et fīliae, quam
Tarquinius habēbat uxōrem. — EUTROPIUS, I

VOCABULARY

circus, ī, m., *the circus Maximus*
lūdus, ī, m., *game*
urbs, urbis, f., *city*
territōrium, territōrī, n., *domain*
   (territory)
cloāca, ae, f., *sewer*
trīcēsimus, a, um, *thirtieth*
circā, prep., *around, round*

cēnsus, ūs, m., *census*
orbis, is, m., *circle*, (with **terrārum**)
   world
scelus, eris, n., *crime*
quadrāgēsimus, a, um, *fortieth*
gener, erī, m., *son-in-law*
uxor, ōris, f., *wife*

NOTES

[1] senātōrum, duplicāvit: infer the meaning from the English derivatives.
[2] circum: where the chariot races were held.   [3] permanent: per + maneō.
[4] vīcit: emphatic.   [5] adiūnxit: ad + iungō.   [6] triumphāns: refers to the
entry of a general into Rome after a successful campaign.   [7] per filiōs:
how does this differ from ā fīliīs?   [8] montīs: *hills.*   [9] adhūc: ad + hoc.
It refers to time.   [10] incognitus: in + cognōscō.

Determine the emphasis, or lack of it, in the case of each genitive in
this passage.
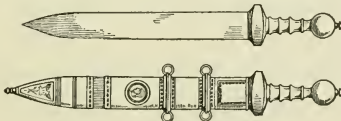
GLADII

EXERCISE IV

Grammar: A. 413; 426, 2; 427, 3; 530; 531, I.; 579; 580. B. 222; 182, 1, 2; 232, 1; 282, 1; 313; 314, 1. G. 392; 337, R. 1; 411; 545, 1, 3; 648; 650. H. 473, 1; 418; 483; 568; 641; 642; 643.

Inflection: volō; exercitus; septimus; ipse.

Order of words: the demonstrative pronouns regularly precede the nouns which they modify.

Prescribed list:

ultimus	quoque	ducentīs	alter
pācem	vīgintī	quadrāgintā	potestātem
posteā	līberīs	hinc	redderentur
octāvō	fūgit	coepērunt	scīrent
decimō	ita	creārī	

THE LAST KING IS EXPELLED FROM ROME AND CONSULS ARE ELECTED

Lūcius Tarquinius Superbus, septimus atque ultimus rēgum, Volscōs, quae gēns nōn longē ab urbe est, vīcit, cum[1] Tuscīs pācem fēcit, et templum Iovī[2] in Capitōliō aedificāvit. Posteā Ardeam oppugnāns, cīvitātem in octāvō decimō mīliāriō ab urbe positam, scelere fīlī suī imperium perdidit. Propter quod scelus Brūtus, parēns Tarquinī, populum commōvit. Exercitus quoque, quī cīvitātem Ardeam cum ipsō rēge oppugnābat, eum relīquit; et rēx ad urbem veniēns exclūsus est,[3] cumque imperāsset[4] annōs vīgintī quīnque, cum uxōre et līberīs suīs fūgit. Ita Rōmae[5] rēgnātum est[6] per septem rēgēs annīs ducentīs quadrāgintā tribus. Hinc cōnsulēs coepērunt prō ūnō rēge duo[7] hāc causā creārī, ut, sī ūnus malus[8] esse voluisset, alter habēns potestātem similem eum coercēret. Et placuit[9] nē imperium longius quam annum habērent, nē per diūturnitātem potestātis īnsolentiōrēs[10] redderentur, sed cīvīlēs semper essent, quī sē[11] post annum scīrent futūrōs esse prīvātōs.

EUTROPIUS, I

VOCABULARY

gēns, gentis, f., *tribe*

urbs, urbis, f., *city*

mīliārium, mīliārī, n., *milestone*

scelus, eris, n., *crime*

perdō, 3, didī, ditus, *lose*

parēns, entis, m., f., *relative*

uxor, ōris, f., *wife*

malus, a, um, *bad*

similis, e, *like* (similar)

coerceō, 2, uī, itus, *check*

placeō, 2, uī, itum, *please*

diūturnitās, ātis, f., *long duration*

cīvīlis, e, *civil, of the citizens*

semper, *always*

NOTES

[1] cum: what part of speech? Consider the case of Tuscīs. [2] Iovī: dative case of Iuppiter. [3] exclūsus est: from exclūdō. Infer the meaning from the English derivative. [4] imperāsset: for imperāvisset; the v is dropped and the two vowels are contracted. [5] Rōmae: what question about rēgnātum est does this word seem to answer? [6] rēgnātum est: the ending um shows that the subject is neuter, *it*. Such impersonal forms are often used, where the English idiom employs the personal construction; *the government was carried on*. [7] duo: take with cōnsulēs. [8] malus: predicate adjective. [9] placuit: impersonal. [10] īnsolentiōrēs: first determine the positive; then infer the meaning from the English derivative. [11] sē: to what word does it refer? For the case, note the ending of futūrōs.

Think of English words from pācem, aedificāvit, positam, ūnus.

EXERCISE V

Grammar: A. 419; 423, 1; 530; 531, 1; 549; 563. B. 227: 230; 282, 1; 286, 2: 295, 4. G. 409; 385; 545, 1, 3; 586; 546. H. 489; 483; 568; 598; 565.

Inflection: possum; auxilium; multus (compare); suī.

Order of words: an appositive usually follows the word to which it belongs.

Prescribed list:

maximē	rēgnum	quoque	tunc
autem	restituī	iterum	suscipī
quisquam	dīmicāvit	reciperētur	sē contulit
manēret	occīdērunt	paene	longē
tamen	revertērunt	vērum	

THE FIRST CONSULS ARE ELECTED AND BEGIN WAR
WITH TARQUINIUS

Fuērunt[1] annō prīmō expulsīs[2] rēgibus cōnsulēs Lūcius Iūnius
Brūtus, quī maximē ēgerat ut Tarquinius pellerētur, et Tarquinius
Collātīnus. Placuit[3] autem nē quisquam in urbe manēret quī
Tarquinius[4] vocārētur. Ergō Collātīnus ex urbe migrāvit et locō
ipsīus factus est Valerius Pūblicola cōnsul.[5] Commōvit tamen
bellum urbī Rōmae rēx Tarquinius, quī erat expulsus, et collēctīs
multīs gentibus, ut in rēgnum posset restituī,[6] dīmicāvit. In prīmā
pugnā Brūtus cōnsul et Arūns, Tarquinī fīlius, in vicem[7] sē occīdē-
runt. Rōmānī tamen ex eā pugnā victōrēs revertērunt. Secundō
quoque annō iterum Tarquinius, ut reciperētur in rēgnum, bellum
Rōmānīs[8] intulit, auxilium[9] eī ferente Porsenā, Tusciae rēge, et
Rōmam paene cēpit. Vērum tunc quoque victus est. Tertiō annō
post rēgēs expulsōs Tarquinius, cum suscipī nōn posset in rēg-
num,[10] neque eī Porsena, quī pācem cum Rōmānīs fēcerat, auxilium
ferret, Tusculum sē contulit, quae cīvitās nōn longē ab urbe est,
atque ibi per quattuordecim annōs prīvātus[11] cum uxōre vīxit.

EUTROPIUS, I

VOCABULARY

placeō, 2, uī, itum, *please*
urbs, urbis, f., *city*
vocō, 1, *call*
ergō, *therefore*
migrō, 1, *depart* (migrate)

colligō, 3, lēgī, lēctus, *gather
    together*
gēns, gentis, f., *tribe*
uxor, ōris, f., *wife*
vīvō, 3, vīxī, vīctum, *live*

NOTES

[1] **fuērunt**: with intransitive verbs two nominatives may be expected, one
subject, one predicate.   [2] **expulsīs**: in what ways may this construction be
translated? Which is best here?   [3] **placuit**: impersonal.   [4] **Tarquinius**:
predicate nominative after **vocārētur**.   [5] **cōnsul**: see note on **Tarquinius**.
[6] **ut . . . restituī**: this states the purpose of **dīmicāvit**.   [7] **in vicem**: *in turn*.
[8] **Rōmānīs**: in what case? Consider the verb.   [9] **auxilium**: object of
ferente.   [10] **cum . . . rēgnum**: this answers the question "why" about **sē
contulit**.   [11] **prīvātus**: from **prīvō**; *in retirement*.

EXERCISE VI

Grammar: A. 291, *b*; 305; 362; 370; 423, 1. B. 240, 2; 250, 1; 187, I, III; 230. G. 614; 345; 347; 393. H. 498; 396; 424; 429; 486.

Inflection: eō; nōmen; alter; is.

Order of words: adverbs are regularly placed before the words which they modify.

Prescribed list:

posteā	autem	obsidibus	poscere
imperāvit	ferē	aggressus	adversum
deinde	intulit	rediēns	fūgit
gravissima	nē . . . quidem	coepit	vacuam
prōcessit	cognitum erat		

CÆSAR CONQUERS GAUL, VISITS BRITAIN, AND RETURNS TO ROME WITH HIS ARMY

Annō urbis conditae[1] sescentēsimō nōnāgēsimō tertiō Gāius Iūlius Caesar, quī posteā imperāvit, cum Lūciō Bibulō cōnsul[2] factus est. Dēcrēta est[3] eī Gallia et Īllyricum cum legiōnibus decem. Is prīmō vīcit Helvētiōs, quī nunc Sēquanī[4] appellantur, deinde per bella gravissima ūsque ad Ōceanum Britannicum prōcessit. Domuit[5] autem annīs novem ferē omnem Galliam, quae inter Alpīs, flūmen Rhodanum,[6] Rhēnum,[6] et Ōceanum est. Britannīs mox bellum intulit, quibus ante eum nē nōmen quidem Rōmānōrum cognitum erat, et eōs[7] quoque victōs[8] obsidibus[9] acceptīs stīpendiāriōs fēcit. Germānōs trāns Rhēnum aggressus immānissimīs proeliīs vīcit. Caesar rediēns ex Galliā victor coepit poscere alterum cōnsulātum, et adversum patriam cum exercitū vēnit. Cōnsulēs cum Pompēiō senātusque omnis atque ūniversa[10] nōbilitās ex urbe fūgit[11] et in Graeciam trānsiit. Ibi, Pompēiō duce, senātus contrā Caesarem bellum parāvit. Caesar autem vacuam urbem ingressus dictātōrem sē fēcit. — EUTROPIUS, VI

VOCABULARY

urbs, urbis, f., *city*

condō, 3, didī, ditus, *found*

sescentēsimus, a, um, *six hundredth*

nōnāgēsimus, a, um, *ninetieth*

dēcernō, 3, crēvī, crētus, *decree*

ūsque, *all the way, even*

domō, 1, uī, itus, *subdue*

mox, *soon*

stīpendiārius, a, um, *tributary* (stipend)

immānis, e, *huge, great*

cōnsulātus, ūs, m., *consulship*

patria, ae, f., *native land* or *city*

ingredior, gredī, gressus, *enter*

dictātor, ōris, m., *dictator* ·

NOTES

[1] conditae: translate as a noun with *after*.   [2] cōnsul: predicate noun used with factus est.   [3] dēcrēta est: agrees with the nearer subject. [4] Sēquanī: predicate noun.   [5] domuit: note the emphatic position. See dēcrēta est above.   [6] Rhodanum, Rhēnum: *Rhone, Rhine*.   [7] eōs, stīpendiāriōs: which of these is the direct object of fēcit, and which the predicate accusative?   [8] victōs: translate by a clause.   [9] obsidibus: what construction does this illustrate, and what is the best way to translate it? [10] ūniversa: infer the meaning from the synonym omnis, and think of an English derivative.   [11] fūgit: see note on dēcrēta est.

EXERCISE VII

Grammar: A. 412; 456; 530; 531, 1; 579; 580. B. 220, 1; 328, 1; 282, 1; 313: 314. G. 399; 423, 1, 2; 545, 1, 3; 648; 650. H. 473, 3; 607; 568; 642; 643.

Inflection: nōlō; caput; maior; ille.

Order of words: words depending on a noun accompanied by a modifier are often put between the noun and the modifier.

Prescribed list:

fortissimōs	tamen	deinde	occīdit
superāvit	nocte	apud	caput
inde	nec	utrimque	cōnspectō
adversum	scīre	contrā	lacrimās
ēvāsit	tantum		

POMPEY'S LONG CONFLICT WITH CÆSAR, FOLLOWED BY HIS DEFEAT AND DEATH

In Hispāniā[1] Caesar exercitūs Pompēī validissimōs et fortissimōs cum tribus ducibus superāvit. Inde in Graeciam trānsiit et adversum[2] Pompēium dīmicāvit. Prīmō proeliō victus est et fugātus, ēvāsit tamen quia nocte[3] Pompēius sequī nōluit, dīxitque Caesar nec Pompēium scīre[4] vincere et illō tantum[5] diē sē[6] potuisse superārī. Deinde in Thessaliā[7] apud Palaepharsālum prōductīs utrimque ingentibus cōpiīs dīmicāvērunt. Numquam adhūc cōpiae Rōmānae in ūnum[8] neque maiōrēs neque meliōribus ducibus convēnerant, tōtum terrārum orbem[9] facile subāctūrae sī contrā barbarōs dūcerentur. Pugnātum est[10] ingentī contentiōne,[11] victusque est ad postrēmum Pompēius, quī Alexandrīam petiit, ut ā rēge Aegyptī acciperet auxilia.[12] Quī[13] fortūnam magis quam amīcitiam secūtus occīdit Pompēium, caput eius ad Caesarem mīsit. Quō cōnspectō Caesar etiam lacrimās fūdisse dīcitur, tantī virī intuēns caput et generī quondam suī. — EUTROPIUS, VI

VOCABULARY

validus, a, um, *strong* (valid)	subigō, 3, ēgī, āctus, *subdue*
fugō, 1, *put to flight*	contentiō, ōnis, f., *conflict*
ingēns, ingentis, *huge*	fundō, 3, fūdī, fūsus, *shed*
numquam, *never*	intueor, 2, tuitus or tūtus, *look upon*
adhūc, *thus far*	gener, erī, m., *son-in-law*
orbis, is, m., *circle* (orb)	quondam, *once*

NOTES

[1] **Hispāniā**: *Spain*.   [2] **adversum**: synonym of **contrā**.   [3] **nocte**: what question about **sequī** does this answer?   [4] **scīre**: *know how*.   [5] **tantum**: adverb, *only*.   [6] **sē**: to whom does this refer?   [7] **Thessaliā**: Thessaly, a district of northern Greece.   [8] **ūnum**: supply **locum**.   [9] **terrārum orbem**: *the world*.   [10] **pugnātum est**: impersonal. Translate by the personal construction.   [11] **ingentī contentiōne**: answers the question "how" about **pugnātum est**.   [12] **ut . . . auxilia**: gives the purpose of **petiit**.   [13] **quī**: what word is the antecedent? Why is **quī** put first?

Select from the passage examples of emphatic words or phrases.

EXERCISE VIII

Grammar: A. 194, *b*; 196; 427, 3; 496; 563; 574. B. 115; 232, 1; 337, 2, *a*, *c*; 295, 4; 300, 1. G. 251, 1; 129; 411; 282; 546, 1, 2; 467. H. 237; 483; 638, 1; 565; 649, II.

Inflection: fīō ; diēs ; posterus ; suus.

Order of words: in all sentences the beginning is a place of emphasis, and there is usually put the emphatic word, phrase, or clause.

Prescribed list:

mōs	mulier	**ūtilius**	potius
ēnūntiāret	autem	ubi	īnstitisset
priusquam	cupidior	postrīdiē	fidem
ēgissent	tandem	ōrant	praeter
licēre	urgente		

HOW PAPIRIUS AVOIDED TELLING HIS MOTHER WHAT WAS DONE IN THE SENATE

Mōs anteā[1] senātōribus Rōmae fuit in cūriam cum praetextātīs fīliīs inīre. Forte rēs maior quaepiam cōnsultāta[2] et in diem posterum prōlāta est, placuitque nē quis[3] eam rem ēnūntiāret priusquam dēcrēta esset. Sed māter Papīrī[4] puerī, quī cum patre suō in cūriā fuerat, percontāta est fīlium quid in senātū patrēs ēgissent. Puer respondit tacendum esse[5] neque id dīcī licēre. Mulier autem fit audiendī cupidior, ac tandem puer, mātre urgente,[6] āctum[7] in senātū dīxit utrum vidērētur ūtilius esse, ūnusne ut duās uxōrēs habēret an ut ūna duōbus nūpta esset. Ubi illa hoc audīvit, domō trepidāns ēgreditur, ad cēterās[8] mātrōnās sē adfert. Pervēnit ad senātum postrīdiē mātrum familiās caterva. Lacrimantēs[9] ōrant ut ūna potius duōbus nūpta fieret quam ut duae ūnī. Senātōrēs in cūriam ingredientēs mīrābantur quae illa mulierum īnsānia[10] et quid sibi postulātiō[11] ista vellet.[12] Puer Papīrius in medium cūriae prōgressus, quid māter audīre īnstitisset, quid ipse mātrī dīxisset, dēmōnstrat. Senātus fidem atque ingenium puerī laudat

et cōnsultum facit nē posthāc puerī cum patribus in cūriam
ineant, praeter illum ūnum Papīrium, cui posteā cognōmen[13]
honōris grātiā datum est "Praetextātus." — AULUS GELLIUS

VOCABULARY

cūria, ae, f., *senate house*

praetextātus, a, um, *wearing the toga
of boyhood*

forte, *by chance*

quispiam, quaepiam, quodpiam, *some*

cōnsultō, 1, *consider*

placeō, 2, uī, itum, *please*

dēcernō, 3, crēvī, crētus, *decide*

percontor, 1, *inquire*

taceō, 2, uī, itus, *be silent* (tacit)

uxor, ōris, f., *wife*

nūpta, *married*

trepidō, 1, *be in alarm*

caterva, ae, f., *crowd*

ingenium, inge'nī, n., *ability*

cōnsultum, ī, n., *decree*

NOTES

[1] anteā: adverb from ante.   [2] cōnsultāta: est is understood.   [3] quis:
pronouns are usually indefinite when they follow nē.   [4] Papīrī: genitive.
[5] tacendum esse: impersonal; the form shows necessity.   [6] mātre urgente:
this states a reason for the boy's action.   [7] āctum: what mood? Consider
dīxit. Translate, *there had been a discussion*.   [8] cēterās: synonym of
reliquī.   [9] lacrimantēs: for the meaning, compare the noun lacrima.
[10] īnsānia: think of the English derivative.   [11] postulātiō: postulō + tiō.
[12] sibi vellet: *meant*.   [13] cognōmen: *name*. One given because of some
characteristic or act.

Think of English words from ēnūntiāret, fīlium, urgente, ūtilius, fidem,
ingenium, facit.

AQUILA LEGIONIS

EXERCISE IX

Grammar: A. 405; 410; 412; 448; 540. B. 216; 218, 1; 220, 1; 281; 286, 1. G. 401; 407; 399; 266; 540; 541. H. 468; 477; 473, 3; 522; 588, I, II.

Inflection: ūtor; vir; multus (compare); tū.

Order of words: in a clause or sentence words are usually arranged, from the beginning, in the order of their prominence in the thought.

Prescribed list:

verbōrum	**plānē**	vīs
cupidissimō	**tū**	scīre

FAVORINUS GIVES GOOD ADVICE ABOUT THE USE OF WORDS

Favōrīnus philosophus[1] adulēscentī, veterum verbōrum[2] in cotī-diānīs sermōnibus ignōtōrum cupidissimō, "Curius," inquit, "et Fabricius et Coruncānius, antīquissimī[3] virī, plānē cum suīs locūtī sunt, neque Auruncōrum aut Sicānōrum aut Pelasgōrum, quī prīmī coluisse Ītaliam dīcuntur, sed aetātis suae verbīs ūsī sunt; tū autem sermōne abhinc multīs annīs iam dēsitō ūteris, quod nēminem vīs scīre atque intellegere quae dīcās. Antīquitātem[4] tibi placēre ais, quod honesta et bona et modesta sit. Vīve ergō mōribus antīquīs, loquere verbīs praesentibus; atque id, quod ā Gāiō Caesare scrīptum est, habē semper in memoriā atque in pectore, ut tamquam saxum sīc fugiās īnsolēns verbum." — AULUS GELLIUS

VOCABULARY

adulēscēns, entis, m., f., *youth*
sermō, ōnis, m., *talk*
ignōtus, a, um, *unknown*
inquit (defective verb), *says*
colō, 3, coluī, cultus, *dwell in*
aetās, ātis, f., *age*
dēsinō, 3, sīvī, situs, *leave off*
placeō, 2, uī, itum, *please*

aiō (defective verb), *say*
vīvō, 3, vīxī, vīctum, *live*
ergō, *therefore*
pectus, oris, n., *breast, heart*
tamquam, *as if*
saxum, ī, n., *rock*
īnsolēns, entis, *unusual*

NOTES

[1] **philosophus**: English derivative? [2] **verbōrum**: take with **cupidissimō**. [3] **antīquissimī**: what is the positive? Synonym of **vetus**. For the meaning, think of an English derivative. [4] **antīquitātem**: formed by attaching a suffix to the stem of the positive of **antīquissimī**. What is the suffix?

Determine whether the following words are emphatic: (l. 1) **verbōrum**, **cotīdiānīs**; (l. 3) **plānē**; (l. 4) **prīmī**; (l. 6) **ūteris**; (l. 11) **īnsolēns**.

EXERCISE X

Grammar: A. 415; 546; 573; 574. B. 224; 288, 1, B; 300, 1. G. 400; 585; 452, 2; 467. H. 473, 2; 600, II, 1; 649, II.

Inflection: dō; manus; cōnsulāris; ego.

Order of words: a dependent genitive, unless emphatic, usually follows the word which it limits.

Prescribed list:

ferae	familiāris	linguā	cotīdiānīs
praeter	tum	mīra	concessī
corpore	mōre	quaerit	dēfuisset
fremitū	prope	obtinēret	cibus
converterat			

A LION LET LOOSE IN THE AMPHITHEATER REFUSES TO ATTACK ANDROCLUS, BUT FAWNS ON HIM

In circō[1] maximō vēnātiōnis pugna populō dabātur. Multae ibi ferae, sed praeter alia omnia leō corpore vāstō et fremitū terrificō[2] animōs oculōsque[3] omnium in sēsē converterat. Intrōductus[4] erat inter complūrīs cēterōs[5] ad pugnam ferārum datōs servus virī cōnsulāris[6]; eī servō[7] Androclus nōmen fuit. Hunc ille leō ubi vīdit procul, repente quasi admīrāns stetit ac deinde placidē, tamquam familiāris,[8] ad hominem accēdit. Tum caudam mōre adūlantium canum blandē movet et manūs hominis, prope iam exanimātī metū,[9] linguā lēniter dēmulcet. Haec tam mīra rēs maximōs populī clāmōrēs excitat et Caesar Androclum vocat quaeritque causam, cūr illī ūnī atrōcissimus leō pepercisset. Ibi Androclus rem admīrandam

nārrat. "Cum prōvinciam," inquit, "Āfricam prōcōnsulārī imperiō meus dominus obtinēret, ego ibi inīquīs[10] eius et cotīdiānīs verberibus ad fugam sum coāctus, et in locōs dēsertōs et remōtōs concessī ac, sī dēfuisset cibus, cōnsilium fuit mortem aliquō pactō quaerere."

<div align="right">AULUS GELLIUS</div>

VOCABULARY

vēnātiō, ōnis, f., *hunting*
leō, ōnis, m., *lion*
servus, ī, m., *slave* (servile)
procul, *at a distance*
repente, *suddenly*
quasi, *just as if*
stō, 1, stetī, statum, *stand*
placidē, *calmly*
tamquam, *as if*
cauda, ae, f., *tail*

adūlor, 1, *fawn*
canis, is, m., f., *dog* (canine)
blandē, *gently*
lēniter, *lightly*
dēmulceō, 2, mulsī, mulctus, *stroke*
atrōx, ōcis, *fierce*
parcō, 3, pepercī, parsum, *spare*
dominus, ī, m., *master*
verber, eris, n., *lash*
pactum, ī, n., *way*

NOTES

[1] circō: think of the English derivative; a place of entertainment. [2] terrificō: there is a common English derivative. [3] oculōs: from this is derived the word "oculist." [4] intrōductus: from intrō, *within*, + dūcō. [5] cēterōs: synonym of reliquī. [6] cōnsulāris: from cōnsul + āris = *pertaining to, of the rank of*. [7] servō: a dative, showing the possessor. Translate it as if it were a nominative, and fuit by the appropriate tense of the verb *have*. [8] familiāris: compare the derivation of this word with that of cōnsulāris. [9] metū: synonym of timor. [10] inīquīs: formed from the adjective aequus by prefixing in. Compare the words "convenient" and "inconvenient," "equity" and "iniquity."

Consider the genitives in the passage and decide whether the position of each is emphatic or not.

EXERCISE XI

Grammar: A. 400; 401; 423, 2; 500, 4; 504, *b*. B. 214, 1, 2; 181, 1; 337, 8, *b*, 2; 338, 1, *c*. G. 390, 1; 405; 336; 430; 428, R. 2. H. 462; 417; 622; 626, 3.

Inflection: ostendō; īgnis; tōtus; quī.

Order of words: the following arrangement of the parts of a predicate is common: ablative, indirect object, direct object, adverb, verb.

Prescribed list:

quendam	cōnspectū	vīctū	statim
nanctus	postquam	postrēmō	cūrāvit
vulnerātō	sublātum	viam	quoque
illīc	tunc	trīduī	beneficī
quidem	operā	dēductus	

ANDROCLUS RELATES HOW HE MET THE WOUNDED LION AND GAINED ITS AFFECTION

Tum specum quendam nanctus remōtum,[1] in eum mē recondō. Neque multō[2] post ad eundem specum vēnit hīc leō, ūnō pede vulnerātō. Atque illīc prīmō quidem cōnspectū[3] advenientis[4] leōnis territus sum; sed postquam intrōgressus[5] leō mē procul videt, mītis accessit et sublātum pedem ostendere mihi quasi opis petendae causā vīsus est. Ibi stirpem ingentem, pedī eius haerentem, revellī et sine magnō iam metū cruōrem siccāvī. Illā tunc meā operā levātus, pede in manibus meīs positō, quiēvit. Ex eō diē triennium[6] tōtum ego et leō in eōdem specū eōdemque vīctū vīximus. Postrēmō autem relīquī specum et viam ferē trīduī permēnsus ā mīlitibus vīsus apprehēnsusque sum[7] et ad dominum ex Āfricā Rōmam[8] dēductus. Is mē statim damnandum dandumque ad ferās cūrāvit. Intellegō autem hunc quoque leōnem captum grātiam mihi nunc beneficī et medicīnae referre. Haec dīxit Androclus; quae cum scrīpta essent circumlātaque populō, omnibus petentibus dīmissus Androclus et poenā solūtus est et leōne dōnātus.[9]

AULUS GELLIUS

VOCABULARY

specus, ūs, m., *cave*

recondō, 3, didī, ditus, *hide away*

terreō, 2, uī, itus, *frighten*

mītis, e, *mild*

(ops), opis, f., *aid*

stirps, pis, f., *root*

ingēns, ingentis, *huge*

haereō, 2, haesī, haesus, *stick*

revellō, 3, vellī, vulsus, *tear away*

cruor, ōris, m., *blood*

siccō, 1, *dry*

levō, 1, *relieve*

quiēscō, 3, ēvī, ētus, *rest* (quiet)

vīvō, 3, vīxī, vīctum, *live*

permētior, 4, mēnsus, *traverse*

damnō, 1, *condemn*

medicīna, ae, f., *relief*

scrībō, 3, scrīpsī, scrīptus, *write* (script)

poena, ae, f., *punishment*

solvō, 3, solvī, solūtus, *release* (solve)

NOTES

[1] **remōtum**: notice that this word is made emphatic by separating it from the word which it modifies.   [2] **multō**: take with **post**, an adverb. [3] **cōnspectū**: from con + spec + tus. Give the force of each one of these. [4] **advenientis**: note the force of the prefix, *towards*.   [5] **intrōgressus**: think of **prōgressus**. The prefix **intrō** means *within*.   [6] **triennium**: from the stems of **trēs** and **annus**.   [7] **apprehēnsus sum**: from ad + prehendō. What common English word from this? What meaning has it?   [8] **Rōmam**: not the object of **dēductus**.   [9] **dōnātus**: think of a common English word from this, and its meaning.

Observe the force of the prefixes in this passage: **re**mōtum, **ac**cessit, **per**mēnsus, **dē**ductus, **re**ferre, **circum**lāta, and others.

EXERCISE XII

Grammar: A. 343 : 405 ; 418 ; 419 ; 546. B. 195 ; 198 ; 216 ; 226 ; 227 ; 288, 1, B. G. 362 ; 401 ; 397 ; 409 ; 585. H. 440, 1 ; 468 ; 480 ; 489 ; 600, II, 1.

Inflection: patior ; latus (noun) ; celeriter (compare) ; īdem.

Order of words: limiting words, when emphatic, usually stand between a preposition and the word which the preposition governs.

Prescribed list:

nōmine	**immīsit**	vulneribus	rettulit
manum	undique	mediīs	statim

THE AFFECTION AND LOYALTY OF A FAMOUS HORSE

Equus Alexandrī rēgis nōmine Būcephalus fuit. Dē hōc equō haec memoriā digna[1] accēpimus. Ubi ōrnātus erat armātusque ad proelium, haud umquam īnscendī sēsē[2] ab aliō nisi ab rēge passus est. Bellō[3] Indicō cum īnsidēns in eō Alexander facinora faceret fortia, in hostium manum, nōn satis sibi prōvidēns, immīsit. Coniectīs undique in Alexandrum tēlīs, vulneribus altīs in cervīce atque in latere equus perfossus est. Moribundus tamen ac prope iam exsanguis ē mediīs hostibus rēgem celeriter rettulit atque, ubi eum extrā[4] tēla extulerat,[5] statim concidit et animam[6] exspīrāvit. Tum rēx Alexander, partā eius bellī victōriā, oppidum in iīsdem locīs condidit idque ob equī honōrēs Būcephalon[7] appellāvit.

<div align="right">AULUS GELLIUS</div>

VOCABULARY

Alexander, drī, m., *Alexander the Great*, king of Macedonia
dignus, a, um, *worthy*
ōrnō, 1, *equip* (ornament)
haud, *not at all*
umquam, *ever*
īnscendō, 3, scendī, scēnsus, *mount*
īnsideō, 2, sēdī, sessus, *sit* (*on*)
facinus, oris, n., *deed*

cervīx, īcis, f., *neck*
perfodiō, 3, fōdī, fossus, *pierce through*
moribundus, a, um, *dying*
exsanguis, e, *lifeless*
concidō, 3, cidī, ——, *collapse*
exspīrō, 1, *breathe out*
pariō, 3, peperī, partus, *achieve*
condō, 3, didī, ditus, *found*

NOTES

[1] digna: followed by the ablative.   [2] sēsē: for the case, consider the voice of īnscendī.   [3] bellō: answers the question "when" about faceret. [4] extrā: what does the word "extraordinary" mean? What is the force of the prefix?   [5] extulerat: get the meaning from the two parts of the word. [6] animam: synonym of vita, found in the English words "vital," "vitality." [7] Būcephalon: accusative singular.

Observe the many words with prefixes in this passage and try to decide what each prefix means.

EXERCISE XIII

Grammar: A. 384; 412; 426, 2, 3; 580. B. 192, 1; 220, 1; 182, 2; 228; 314, 1. G. 359; 399; 416, 1; 418, 1, *a*, *b*; 650. H. 434, 2; 473, 3; 418; 483; 642; 643.

Inflection: fīō; terra; bonus (compare); quīdam.

Order of words: an appositive usually follows the word to which it belongs.

Prescribed list:

accūsāvit	nōmine	adversum	sententiam
mollibus	quaedam	hinc	inde
pāx	tum	āvertit	prōsecūta est

HOW SCIPIO REPELLED THE CHARGE OF HAVING TAKEN A BRIBE

Mārcus Naevius, tribūnus plēbis, accūsāvit Scīpiōnem[1] ad populum, dīxitque eum accēpisse ā rēge Antiochō pecūniam, ut condiciōnibus mollibus pāx cum eō populī Rōmānī nōmine fieret, et quaedam item alia indigna[2] tālī virō addidit.[3] Tum Scīpiō pauca praefātus, quae dignitās[4] vītae suae atque glōria[5] postulābat, "Memoriā," inquit, "Quirītēs,[6] repetō,[7] diem esse hodiernum, quō Hannibalem Poenum, imperiō vestrō inimīcissimum,[8] magnō proeliō in terrā Āfricā vīcī, pācemque et victōriam vōbīs peperī praeclāram. Nōn igitur sīmus[9] adversum deōs ingrātī et, cēnseō, relinquāmus nebulōnem hunc, eāmus hinc prōtinus[10] Iovī optimō maximō grātulātum."[11] Id cum dīxisset, āvertit et īre ad Capitōlium coepit. Tum cōntiō ūniversa, quae ad sententiam dē Scīpiōne ferendam convēnerat, relictō tribūnō Scīpiōnem in Capitōlium comitāta, atque inde ad aedēs[12] eius cum laetitiā prōsecūta est.——AULUS GELLIUS

VOCABULARY

plēbs, plēbis, f., *common people*
pecūnia, ae, f., *money* (pecuniary)
tālis, e, *such*

(praefor), fārī, fātus, *say beforehand*
vīta, ae, f., *life* (vital)
inquam (defective verb), *say*

hodiernus, a, um, *to-day's*

pariō, 3, peperī, partus, *achieve*

praeclārus, a, um, *famous*

igitur, *therefore*

deus, ī, m., *god*

cēnseō, 2, uī, us, *propose, move*

nebulō, ōnis, m., *paltry fellow*

grātulor, 1, *give thanks*

cōntiō, ōnis, m., *assembly*

comitor, 1, *accompany*

laetitia, ae, f., *joy*

NOTES

[1] **Scīpiōnem:** Publius Cornelius Scipio Africanus, who defeated Hannibal at Zama. [2] **indigna:** from in + dignus, *worthy*. What is the force of the prefix? Think of "convenient" and "inconvenient." [3] **addidit:** get the meaning from the English derivative. [4] **dignitās:** from dignus and what suffix? What is the real meaning of the word? [5] **glōria:** think of the English word. [6] **Quirītēs:** *Roman citizens*. [7] **repetō:** derive the meaning from the prefix and the verb. [8] **inimīcissimum:** from in + amīcus. Compare **indignus** above. [9] **sīmus:** introduce the translation of this and the following subjunctives by *let*. [10] **prōtinus:** synonym of statim. [11] **grātulātum:** notice that this looks like a participle, but does not agree with any other word. It shows purpose. [12] **aedēs:** synonym of domus.

Note the position of the appositives in the passage.

EXERCISE XIV

Grammar: A. 346, *a*, 3; 405; 409; 531, 1; 580. B. 201, 2; 216; 218; 282, 1; 314, 1. G. 369; 401; 545, 1, 3; 650. H. 441; 468; 476; 568; 642; 643.

Inflection: doceō; domus; omnis; is.

Order of words: indefinite pronouns are usually unemphatic and follow their nouns.

Prescribed list:

locūtus erat	cōnspicimus	propinqua	praefectus
familiārēs	quandam	vēndidissem	turrim
prōsequēbāmur	ēditam	ēmissem	latere
subeuntēs	īgnī	docuisset	

HOW TO MAKE BUILDINGS FIREPROOF

Locūtus erat Antōnius Iūliānus rhētor fēlīcissimē eumque nōs, familiārēs[1] eius, prōsequēbāmur domum, cum subeuntēs montem Cispium[2] cōnspicimus īnsulam[3] quandam, multīs altīsque tabulātīs

ēditam, īgnī occupātam[4] et propinqua iam omnia flagrāre vāstō
incendiō.[5] Tum quispiam[6] ibi ex comitibus Iūliānī, "Magnī," in-
quit, "reditūs[7] urbānōrum praediōrum, sed perīcula sunt longē
maxima. Sī quid autem posset remedī[8] esse, nē domūs Rōmae
ārdērent, vēndidissem[9] rēs rūsticās et urbicās[10] ēmissem." Atque
illī Iūliānus, "Sī annālem," inquit, "ūndēvīcēsimum Quīntī Claudī
lēgissēs, docuisset tē profectō Archelāus, rēgis Mithridātī[11] prae-
fectus, quō[12] remediō īgnem dēfenderēs. In eō enim librō scrīptum
invēnī,[13] cum oppugnāret Lūcius Sulla in terrā Atticā Pīraeum et
contrā Archelāus, rēgis Mithridātī praefectus, ex eō oppidō prōpug-
nāret,[14] turrim ligneam dēfendendī causā strūctam, ex omnī latere
circumplexam īgnī, ārdēre nōn potuisse, quod alūmine ab Archelāō
oblita fuisset."[15] — AULUS GELLIUS

VOCABULARY

rhētor, oris, m., *teacher of oratory*

fēlīciter, *happily*

tabulātum, ī, n., *floor, story*

flagrō, 1, *be on fire*

vāstus, a, um, *enormous*

comes, itis, m., f., *companion*

inquam (defective verb), *say*

urbānus, a, um, *of the city* (urbane)

praedium, praedī, n., *estate*

ārdeō, 2, ārsī, ārsūrus, *burn* (ardent)

rūsticus, a, um, *of the country*

annālis, is, m., *chronicle*

ūndēvīcēsimus, a, um, *nineteenth*

legō, 3, lēgī, lēctus, *read*

profectō, *assuredly*

liber, librī, m., *book*

scrībō, 3, scrīpsī, scrīptus, *write* (scribe)

ligneus, a, um, *wooden*

struō, 3, strūxī, strūctus, *erect* (structure)

circumplectō, 3, ——, plexus, *encircle*

alūmen, inis, n., *alum*

oblinō, 3, lēvī, litus, *smear*

NOTES

[1] familiārēs: used as a noun.   [2] Cispium: a part of the Esquiline hill.
[3] īnsulam: *tenement building*.   [4] occupātam: supply esse.   [5] incendiō:
from the verb incendō and the suffix ium, showing *action*.   [6] quispiam:
synonym of aliquis.   [7] reditūs: noun from the verb redeō.   [8] reme′dī:
genitive. Get the meaning from the English derivative.   [9] vēndidissem:
this is in the conclusion of an unreal condition.   [10] urbicās: synonym of

urbānus. ¹¹ **Mithridātī**: genitive. Mithridates, king of Pontus, in Asia Minor. ¹² **quō**: interrogative; this clause is the second object of **docuisset**. ¹³ **invēnī**: in + veniō, *come upon*. ¹⁴ **prōpugnāret**: note the prefix and its force. ¹⁵ **fuisset**: used instead of **esset**.

Think of English words from **locūtus erat, rhētor, cōnspicimus, īnsulam, rēgis, īgnem**.

EXERCISE XV

Grammar: A. 346, *a*, 3; 384; 456; 530; 531, 1; 568. B. 201, 1; 192, 1; 328, 1; 282, 1; 297, 1. G. 369; 359; 423, 1, 2; 545, 1, 3; 553, 1. H. 442; 434, 2; 607, 1; 568; 566.

Inflection: possum; fīlius; dulcis; hīc.

Order of words: possessive adjectives, unless emphatic, stand after their nouns.

Prescribed list:

frātris	redeō	efficiam	oportet
līberīs	experior	dēbeō	aequō
quaererem	studiīs	enim	subīre
beneficiō	sentiam	suscipiendās	

PLINY WRITES TO A FRIEND ON THE CHOICE OF A BOYS' SCHOOL

Quid iūcundius mihi esse potuit quam ut praeceptōrem frātris tuī līberīs quaererem? Nam beneficiō¹ tuō in scholam redeō et illam dulcissimam aetātem quasi² resūmō.³ Sedeō inter iuvenēs, ut solēbam, atque etiam experior quantum apud illōs auctōritātis ex studiīs habeam. Cum omnīs quī profitentur audierō, quid dē quōque sentiam scrībam,⁴ efficiamque, quantum tamen epistulā cōnsequī poterō, ut ipse omnīs audīsse videāris. Dēbeō enim tibi, dēbeō memoriae frātris tuī hanc fidem, hoc studium, praesertim super tantā rē. Nam quid magis interest vestrā⁵ quam ut līberī dignī illō⁶ patre, tē patruō reperiantur? Nec ignōrō suscipiendās offēnsās in ēligendō praeceptōre, sed oportet mē nōn modo offēnsās vērum etiam simultātēs prō frātris tuī fīliīs tam aequō animō subīre quam parentēs prō suīs.⁷ Valē. — PLINY THE YOUNGER

VOCABULARY

iūoundus, a, um, *pleasant*

praeceptor, ōris, m., *teacher*

schola, ae, f., *school*

aetās, ātis, f., *age*

sedeō, 2, sēdī, sessum, *sit*

iuvenis, is, m., f., *youth* (juvenile)

soleō, 2, solitus, *be accustomed*

profiteor, 2, fessus, *be a teacher*

scrībō, 3, scrīpsī, scrīptus, *write* (scripture)

epistula, ae, f., *letter*

dignus, a, um, *worthy*

patruus, ī, m., *uncle*

ignōrō, 1, *be unaware* (ignorant)

offēnsa, ae, f., *inconvenience*

ēligō, 3, lēgī, lēctus, *select*

simultās, ātis, f., *jealousy*

NOTES

[1] beneficiō: shows cause, *thanks to.* [2] quasi: *as it were.* [3] resūmō: from re + sūmō. Give an English verb from this word. [4] scrībam: the preceding clause is its object. [5] interest vestrā: *concerns you.* Vestrā is the ablative singular feminine of the possessive pronoun, governed by interest. [6] illō: the ablative follows dignus. Patre is an appositive of illō. [7] suīs: understand fīliīs.

EXERCISE XVI

Grammar: A. 419; 420, 1; 423, 2; 427, 2, 3. B. 227, 2, *a*; 181, 1; 182, 1, *a*; 228, 1, *a*. G. 409; 410; 336; 337; 386. H. 489, 1; 417; 491, II, 1, 3.

Inflection: sequor; mors; tōtus; ille.

Order of words: the place of emphasis in the clause or sentence is usually the beginning.

Prescribed list:

ācrius	manibus	vigiliam	manēbat
strepitus	catēnās	quoque	pretiō
deinde	inde	discesserat	condūcit
cōnfectus			

ATHENODORUS HIRES A HAUNTED HOUSE

Erat Athēnīs spatiōsa[1] et capāx[2] domus, sed īnfāmis et pestilēns. Per silentium[3] noctis sonus ferrī et, sī attenderēs[4] ācrius, strepitus vinculōrum, longius prīmō, deinde ē proximō, audiēbātur; mox appārēbat īdōlon, senex maciē et squālōre cōnfectus, prōmissā

barbā, manibus catēnās gerēbat quatiēbatque.[5] Inde inhabitantēs
trīstīs noctīs per metum [6] vigilābant. Vigiliam morbus et, crēscente [7]
metū, mors sequēbātur. Nam interdiū quoque, quamquam disces-
serat imāgō, memoria imāginis manēbat. Dēserta inde erat domus
et tōta illī mōnstrō relicta. Vēnit Athēnās philosophus Athēnodōrus,
vīdit titulum, audītōque pretiō omnia cognōvit ac nihilōminus [8] eam
condūcit.[9] — PLINY THE YOUNGER

VOCABULARY

īnfāmis, e, *of ill repute*

pestilēns, entis, *unhealthy*

sonus, ī, m., *sound*

ferrum, ī, n., *iron*

vinculum, ī, n., *fetter*

mox, *soon*

appāreō, 2, uī, ——, *appear*

īdōlon, ī, n., *ghost*

senex, senis, m., *old man*

maciēs, ēī, f., *leanness*

squālor, ōris, m., *filth*

prōmittō, 3, mīsī, missus, *let grow*

barba, ae, f., *beard*

quatiō, 3, ——, quassus, *shake*

trīstis, e, *sad*

vigilō, 1, *keep awake* (vigil)

morbus, ī, m., *sickness* (morbid)

interdiū, *by day*

quamquam, *although*

titulus, ī, m., *placard "for rent"*

NOTES

[1] spatiōsa: spatium + ōsus, *full of.*   [2] capāx: synonym of magnus.
English derivative ?   [3] silentium: think of the English derivative.
[4] attenderēs: see note on silentium.   [5] quatiēbat: all the verbs thus far
are in this tense. Why ?   [6] metum: synonym of timor.   [7] crēscente:
synonym of augeor.   [8] nihilōminus: nihil + minus.   [9] condūcit: *rents.*

From many of the words in the passage are derived common English
words. Make a list.
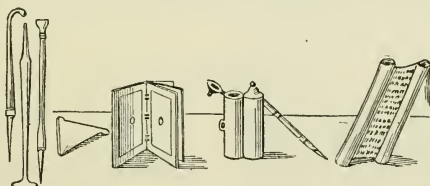
WRITING MATERIALS

EXERCISE XVII

Grammar: A. 384; 401; 409; 412; 506; 563. B. 192, 1; 214, 1, *c*; 218; 220, 1; 338, 3; 295, 1. G. 359; 405; 401; 399; 432, R.; 546, 1. H. 434, 2; 462; 476; 473, 3; 628; 565.

Inflection: eō; locus; posterus (compare); ipse.

Order of words: a word, phrase, or clause is more likely to limit a word which follows it than one which precedes it.

Prescribed list

poscit	initiō	intrā	adiit
vacua	tollere	respicit	posteā
fingeret	appropinquāre	morātus	

ATHENODORUS CAUSES THE GHOST TO DEPART FROM THE HAUNTED HOUSE

Ubi coepit advesperāscere,[1] Athēnodōrus poscit pugillārēs, stilum, lūmen[2]; suōs omnīs in interiōra dīmittit; ipse ad scrībendum animum, oculōs, manum intendit, nē vacua mēns[3] sibi metūs fingeret. Initiō silentium[4] noctis; deinde concutī ferrum, vincula movērī. Ille nōn tollere oculōs, nōn remittere stilum. Tum crēscere strepitus, appropinquāre et iam ut in līmine, iam ut intrā līmen audīrī. Respicit, videt nārrātam sibi imāginem. Stābat innuēbatque digitō similis vocantī.[5] Athēnodōrus nōn morātus tollit lūmen et sequitur. Ībat illa[6] lentō gradū[7] quasi gravis vinculīs in āream domūs, repente dīlāpsa dēserit comitem. Dēsertus herbās[8] et folia coācta signum locō pōnit. Posterō diē adiit magistrātus, monet ut illum locum effodī iubeant. Inveniuntur[9] ossa īnserta catēnīs; collēcta pūblicē sepeliuntur. Domus posteā mōnstrō caruit. — PLINY THE YOUNGER

VOCABULARY

pugillārēs, ium, m., *writing tablets*
stilus, ī, m., *stylus*, used for writing
scrībō, 3, scrīpsī, scrīptus, *write*
oculus, ī, m., *eye* (oculist)

intendō, 3, tendī, tentus, *direct* (intention)
concutiō, 3, cussī, cussus, *shake* (concussion)

vinculum, ī, n., *fetter*

līmen, inis, n., *threshold*

stō, 1, stetī, statum, *stand*

innuō, 3, nuī, nūtum, *beckon*

digitus, ī, m., *finger*

vocō, 1, *call* (vocation)

lentus, a, um, *slow*

gradus, ūs, m., *step* (grade)

quasi, *as if*

ārea, ae, f., *court*

repente, *suddenly*

dīlābor, 3, lāpsus, *glide away*

comes, itis, m., f., *companion*

folium, folī, n., *leaf*

effodiō, 3, fōdī, fossus, *dig up*

ōs, ossis, n., *bone* (ossify)

sepeliō, 4, īvī, sepultus, *bury*

careō, 2, uī, itūrus, *be free from*

NOTES

[1] advesperāscere : from ad + the stem found in vesper + scō, which denotes that the action is beginning. [2] lūmen : synonym of lūx. [3] mēns : synonym of animus. [4] silentium : English derivative ? [5] vocantī : take with similis and think of it as having the force of a noun. [6] illa : refers to imāginem. [7] gradū : answers the question "how" about ībat. [8] herbās : *turf.* [9] inveniuntur : in + veniō, *come upon.*

Observe that several of the principal verbs in the passage, such as concutī, are in the infinitive mood. This adds vividness and an air of animation to the narrative. They should be translated by the indicative mood. The infinitive thus used is called the historical infinitive. Observe also the omission of conjunctions.

EXERCISE XVIII

Grammar: A. 496; 540; 546; 580; 585. B. 337, 2, *a*, *f*; 286, 1; 288, 1, B; 314, 1; 318. G. 665; 666; 541; 585; 650; 654. H. 638, 1; 588, I, II; 600, II, 1; 642; 643; 644.

Inflection: reperiō; iter; alter; īdem.

Order of words: temporal clauses usually precede, and purpose clauses usually follow, the verb on which they depend.

Prescribed list:

crēberrimē	redīsse	hospitium	portam
ignōtum	trāditum	ōrāre	priusquam
quendam	ūnā	quoniam	quaesīsse
cōnscendere	hospitem	paterētur	fūgisse
nāvigāsset			

TWO STRANGE DREAMS, THROUGH ONE OF WHICH A CRIME WAS DETECTED AND PUNISHED

Duo somnia crēberrimē commemorantur : ūnum dē Simōnide, quī,[1] cum ignōtum quendam prōiectum mortuum vīdisset eumque humāvisset habēretque in animō nāvem cōnscendere, monērī vīsus est nē id faceret ab eō quem sepultūrā affēcerat ; sī nāvigāsset,[2] eum naufragiō esse peritūrum. Itaque Simōnidem redīsse[3] ; perīsse cēterōs,[4] quī tum nāvigāssent.

Alterum ita trāditum est.[5] Cum duo quīdam Arcades[6] familiārēs iter ūnā facerent et Megaram[7] vēnissent, alterum ad caupōnem dēvertisse,[8] ad hospitem alterum. Vīsum esse[9] in somnīs[10] eī quī erat in hospitiō[11] illum alterum ōrāre ut subvenīret, quod[12] sibi ā caupōne interitus[13] parārētur ; eum prīmō perterritum somniō surrēxisse ; dein[14] cum sē collēgisset idque vīsum prō nihilō habendum esse dūxisset,[15] recubuisse. Tum eī dormientī eundem illum vīsum esse rogāre ut, quoniam sibi[16] vīvō nōn subvēnisset, mortem suam nē inultam[17] esse paterētur ; sē interfectum in plaustrum ā caupōne esse coniectum ; petere ut māne ad portam adesset, priusquam plaustrum ex oppidō exīret. Hōc somniō eum commōtum, māne ad portam fuisse, quaesīsse ex bubulcō quid esset in plaustrō ; illum perterritum fūgisse, mortuum repertum esse ; caupōnem, rē patefactā,[18] poenās dedisse. — CICERO

VOCABULARY

somnium, somnī, n., *dream*
commemorō, 1, *relate*
morior, 3, mortuus, *die* (mortal)
humō, 1, *bury*
sepultūra, ae, f., *burial*
naufragium, naufra'gī, n., *wreck*
pereō, 4, iī, itūrus, *perish*
caupō, ōnis, m., *innkeeper*
subveniō, 4, vēnī, ventum, *come to the aid of*

surgō, 3, surrēxī, surrēctus, *rise* (surge)
colligō, 3, lēgī, lēctus, *collect*
recumbō, 3, cubuī, ——, *lie down again*
dormiō, 4, īvī, ītum, *sleep* (dormant)
plaustrum, ī, n., *cart*
māne, *early*
adsum, esse, fuī, ——, *be at hand*
bubulcus, ī, m., *ploughman*

NOTES

[1] **quī**: take with **vīsus est**.   [2] **nāvigāsset**: indirect discourse dependent on **monērī**.   [3] **redīsse**: indirect discourse dependent on **commemorantur**.   [4] **cēterōs**: synonym of **reliquī**.   [5] **trāditum est**: the story is told in indirect discourse dependent on this verb.   [6] **Arcades**: *Greeks*.   [7] **Megaram**: a town in Greece.   [8] **dēvertisse**: **dē + vertō**.   [9] **vīsum esse**: the principal verb in the sentence.   [10] **somnīs**: synonym of **somniīs**.   [11] **hospitiō**: i.e. in his friend's house.   [12] **quod**: *because*.   [13] **interitus**: synonym of **mors**.   [14] **dein**: = **deinde**.   [15] **dūxisset**: *had considered*.   [16] **sibi**: for the case, consider **subvēnisset**.   [17] **inultam**: compare **ulcīscor** and **in**, as in "inconvenient."   [18] **patefactā**: **pateō + faciō**.

Study the use of the pronouns in the passage, and observe to which one of the three characters in the story each refers.

EXERCISE XIX

Grammar: A. 346; 367; 384; 580.   B. 187, II, *a*; 192, 1; 314, 1. G. 346; 359; 650.   H. 426, 1; 434, 2; 642; 643.

Inflection: possum; gēns; nūllus; quī.

Order of words: the normàl order of the sentence is: (1) subject; (2) modifiers of subject; (3) modifiers of verb; (4) verb.   Changes in this order are due to emphasis.

Prescribed list:

paucōs	veterēs	ultimus	caput
statim	corpus	excēdēbat	stīpendiō
convertit	statiōnēs	meruit	impositō
redditum esse	peditum	statuit	

THE CHARACTER OF HANNIBAL AND HIS ACTIVITY IN SPAIN

Hannibal[1] post prīmum Pūnicum[2] bellum blandiēbat patrī Hamilcarī ut in Hispāniam dūcerētur. Dīxit sē hostem futūrum esse populō Rōmānō. Post paucōs annōs missus est Hannibal in Hispāniam. Statim omnem exercitum in sē convertit. Hamilcarem iuvenem redditum esse sibi[3] veterēs mīlitēs crēdidērunt. Et imperātōrī[4] et exercituī cārus erat. Nūllō labōre aut corpus fatīgārī[5]

aut animus vincī poterat. Multī saepe humī[6] eum iacentem inter
statiōnēs mīlitum vīdērunt. Equitum peditumque longē prīmus
erat. Prīnceps in proelium ībat,[7] ultimus ē proeliō excēdēbat. Trīs
annōs sub Hasdrubale[8] imperātōre meruit. Ex quō diē Hannibal
dux dēclārātus est, Saguntīnīs[9] bellum īnferre statuit. In Olcadum
prius fīnīs exercitum dūxit. Cartalam, caput gentis eius, expugnāvit.
Minōrēs cīvitātēs, stīpendiō impositō, imperium accēpērunt. Victor
exercitus Carthāginem Novam in hīberna dēductus est. — LIVY

VOCABULARY

blandiō, 4, īvī, ītus, *coax*	cārus, a, um, *dear*
iuvenis, is, m., f., *youth* (juvenile)	humus, ī, m., *ground*
crēdō, 3, didī, ditus, *believe*	iaceō, 2, uī, ——, *lie*

NOTES

[1] **Hannibal**: famous leader of the Carthaginians in the second Punic war.
[2] **Pūnicum**: *Punic*. [3] **sibi**: refers to the subject of the principal verb.
[4] **imperātōrī**: imperō + tor. [5] **fatīgārī**: English derivative? [6] **humī**:
locative. [7] **ībat**: this tense expresses a customary action. [8] **Hasdrubale**:
Hannibal's brother-in-law. [9] **Saguntīnīs**: people of Saguntum, a large
city of Spain. For the case, consider **īnferre**.

The passage contains variations from the normal order of the sentence.
Account for them.

EXERCISE XX

Grammar: A. 402; 506; 540; 546; 563. B. 214, 2; 338, 3: 286, 1;
288, 1, B; 295, 1. G. 390, 2; 432, R.; 540; 585; 546, 1. H. 464;
628; 588, 1; 600, II, 1; 565.

Inflection: ferō; agmen; gravis; hīc.

Order of words: the following arrangement of the parts of a predicate
is common: ablative, indirect object, direct object, adverb, verb.

Prescribed list:

vī	**aquam**	cessisse	nōndum
adortī	quadrāgintā	sublātō	ōrārent
praedā	autem	priusquam	tunc
rīpam	dispōnit	praeter	sententia

HANNIBAL SUBDUES MANY MORE OF THE TRIBES OF SPAIN

Prīmō vēre in Vaccaeōs prōmōtum est[1] bellum. Hermandica et Arbocala, eōrum urbēs, vī captae sunt. Arbocala et virtūte et multitūdine oppidānōrum[2] diū dēfēnsa est. Ab Hermandicā profugī concitant Carpētānōs et Hannibalem adortī haud procul Tagō flūmine agmen grave praedā[3] turbāvērunt. Hannibal proeliō abstinuit, castrīsque super rīpam positīs, flūmen vadō trāiēcit.[4] Equitibus monuit ut, cum hostīs ingressōs[5] aquam vidērent, adorīrentur impedītum agmen. In rīpā elephantōs, quadrāgintā autem erant, dispōnit. Hostēs, quod metū[6] cessisse crēdēbant Rōmānōs, clāmōre sublātō, sine ūllīus imperiō in flūmen ruunt. Pars magna flūmine absūmpta est. Priusquam postrēmī ā tantō timōre reciperent animōs, Hannibal fugam ex rīpā fēcit vāstātīsque agrīs intrā paucōs diēs hanc gentem quoque in dēditiōnem accēpit. Et iam omnia trāns Hibērum[7] praeter Saguntīnōs Carthāginiēnsium[8] erant. Cum Saguntīnīs bellum nōndum erat. Lēgātī ā Saguntīnīs Rōmam missī sunt. Cōnsulēs tunc Rōmae erant Pūblius Cornēlius Scīpiō et Tiberius Semprōnius Longus. Cum lēgātī auxilium ad bellum iam imminēns ōrārent, Saguntum oppugnārī nūntiātum est. Tunc relāta est dē integrō[9] rēs ad senātum. Haec sententia, quae optima vidēbātur, vīcit, lēgātīque Saguntum ad Hannibalem missī sunt atque inde Carthāginem, sī nōn absisterētur[10] bellō, ad ducem ipsum dēposcendum.[11] — LIVY

VOCABULARY

vēr, vēris, n., *spring* (vernal)
profugus, ī, m., *exile*
concitō, 1, *arouse*
haud, *not, not at all*
procul, *far*
turbō, 1, *throw into confusion*
abstineō, 2, uī, tentus, *refrain*
super, *upon*

ingredior, 3, gressus, *enter*
crēdō, 3, didī, ditus, *believe* (credit)
ruō, 3, ruī, rutus, *rush*
absūmō, 3, sūmpsī, sūmptus, *destroy*
immineō, 2, uī, ——, *threaten* (imminent)
integer, gra, grum, *fresh, whole* (integer)
absistō, 3, stitī, ——, *cease*

NOTES

[1] prōmōtum est: prō + moveō.   [2] oppidānōrum: from oppidum and the suffix ānus, *belonging to*.   [3] praedā: take with grave.   [4] trāiēcit: derivation? A synonym of trānseō.   [5] ingressōs: understand esse.   [6] metū: synonym of timor. It answers the question "why" about cessisse.   [7] Hibērum: the largest river of northeastern Spain.   [8] Carthāginiēnsium: the suffix is ēnsis, *belonging to*. A predicate genitive showing possession.   [9] dē integrō: used adverbially. Compare dē imprōvīsō.   [10] absisterētur: used impersonally.   [11] dēposcendum: = poscendum. This was to be done in order that he might be punished for breaking the treaty.

EXERCISE XXI

Grammar: A. 346, *a*, 2; 370; 412; 546. B. 201, 1; 187, 3; 220, 1; 288, 1, B. G. 369; 347; 399; 585. H. 442; 429; 473, 3; 600, II, 1.

Inflection: agō; turris; graviter (compare); is.

Order of words: a genitive, unless emphatic, follows the noun which it limits.

Prescribed list:

dum	succēdēbat	vulnerātus	coortum est
ultrā	dēlēcta	obsidiō	anceps
aggreditur	certāmine	cūrārētur	expellunt
adversus	cadēbant	operum	redigunt
vīneās			

THE FIERCE ATTACK ON SAGUNTUM, IN WHICH HANNIBAL IS WOUNDED

Dum ea Rōmānī parant cōnsultantque, iam Saguntum summā vī oppugnābātur. Cīvitās ea longē opulentissima ultrā Hibērum fuit. Hannibal, agrīs vāstātīs, urbem aggreditur. Adversus angulum mūrī vīneās agere īnstituit, per quās ariēs moenibus[1] admovērī[2] posset.[3] Nōn prōsperē[4] autem coeptīs[5] succēdēbant. Et turris ingēns imminēbat, et mūrus suprā cēterae[6] modum[7] altitūdinis mūnītus erat, et iuventūs dēlēcta, ubi plūrimum perīculī ac timōris ostendēbātur, ibi vī maiōre obsistēbat. In hōc certāmine haud ferē[8] plūrēs Saguntīnī cadēbant quam Poenī. Hannibal ipse adversum

femur trāgulā graviter vulnerātus cecidit. Obsidiō per paucōs
diēs magis quam oppugnātiō fuit,[9] dum[10] vulnus ducis cūrārētur.
Per quod tempus ut[11] quiēs certāminum erat, ita[11] ab apparātū
operum ae mūnītiōnum nihil[12] cessātum est. Itaque ācrius dē
integrō[13] coortum est bellum. Multae partēs mūrī quassātae erant.
Trēs turrēs quantumque inter eās mūrī erat cum fragōre ingentī
prōcidērunt.[14] Cum diū anceps fuisset certāmen, clāmōrem repente
oppidānī[15] tollunt hostemque in ruīnās mūrī expellunt et postrēmō
in castra redigunt. — Livy

VOCABULARY

opulentus, a, um, *wealthy*

urbs, urbis, f., *city*

angulus, ī, m., *corner*

ariēs, etis, m., *battering-ram*

ingēns, ingentis, *huge*

immineō, 2, uī, ——, *overhang*

suprā, *beyond*

iuventūs, ūtis, f., *youth*

obsistō, 3, stitī, stitus, *stand in the way*

femur, feminis, n., *thigh*

trāgula, ae, f., *dart*

apparātus, ūs, m., *preparation*

cessō, 1, *cease*

integer, gra, grum, *fresh*

quassō, 1, *shake*

fragor, ōris, m., *crash*

repente, *suddenly*

NOTES

[1] moenibus: synonym of mūrus. For the case consider admovērī.
[2] admovērī: ad + moveō. [3] posset: shows the purpose of īnstituit.
[4] prōsperē: English derivative? [5] coeptīs: participle of coepī used as a noun.
[6] cēterae: synonym of reliquus. [7] modum: *limit*. [8] haud ferē: *hardly*.
[9] fuit: *it was*. [10] dum: with the subjunctive, *until*. [11] ut, ita: correlatives. [12] nihil: adverbial accusative of degree. [13] dē integrō: used
adverbially. Compare dē imprōvīsō. [14] prōcidērunt: prō + cadō. [15] oppidānī: from oppidum and the suffix ānus, *belonging to*.

Make a list of the phrases consisting of a noun and limiting genitive, and
determine the emphatic word in each phrase.

EXERCISE XXII

Grammar: A. 404; 412; 531, 1; 540; 549. B. 219; 220, 1; 282, 1; 286, 1, 2. G. 408; 399; 545, 1; 540; 586. H. 475; 473, 3; 568; 588, 1; 598.

Inflection: respondeō; opus; minor; suus.

Order of words: the limiting word usually precedes the word which it limits, unless the latter is emphatic.

Prescribed list:

nūntius	vetus	adorta est	minuitur
lēgātiō	aliquot	simul	paulisper
inde	reficerent	inopia	profectiō
ortum	oppugnātiō	obsidiō	oppressī

HANNIBAL FORESTALLS THE ROMAN EMBASSY AND THEN ATTACKS SAGUNTUM

Interim Rōmā lēgātōs vēnisse nūntiātum est. Appārēbat[1] eōs ab Hannibale nōn admissōs[2] prōtinus[3] Carthāginem itūrōs esse. Litterās igitur[4] nūntiōsque ad prīncipēs factiōnis[5] Barcīnae[6] prae-mittit Hannibal ut praeparent suōrum animōs. Itaque, praeter-quam quod[7] admissī audītīque sunt, ea quoque vāna[8] lēgātiō fuit. Hannō ūnus adversus senātum causam foederis magnō silentiō propter auctōritātem suam nōn cum adsēnsū[9] audientium ēgit. Respōnsum inde lēgātīs Rōmānīs est, bellum ortum ab Saguntīnīs, nōn ab Hannibale esse; populum Rōmānum iniūstē[10] facere, sī Saguntīnōs vetustissimae Carthāginiēnsium societātī praepōnat.[11] Hannibal, quia fessōs[12] mīlitēs proeliīs operibusque habēbat, paucō-rum iīs diērum quiētem dedit. Saguntīnī ut ā proeliīs quiētem habue-rant per aliquot diēs, ita nōn nocte, nōn diē umquam cessāverant ab opere, ut novum mūrum ab eā parte quā patefactum[13] oppidum erat reficerent. Inde oppugnātiō ācrior quam ante eōs adorta est. Utrimque summā vī et mūniunt et pugnant; sed interiōra[14] tuendō minōrem in diēs[15] urbem Saguntīnī faciunt. Simul crēscit[16] inopia omnium longā obsidiōne et minuitur exspectātiō externae opis, cum

tam procul Rōmānī, ūnica[17] spēs, essent. Paulisper tamen animōs recreāvit[18] repentīna profectiō Hannibalis in Ōrētānōs Carpētānōsque, quī duo populī oppressī eius celeritāte omīsērunt mōta arma. Postrēmō ad ipsam arcem ductus est exercitus, atrōxque proelium cum multōrum utrimque caede[19] initum[20] et pars arcis capta est. — LIVY

VOCABULARY

appāreō, 2, uī, ——, *appear* (apparent)

praeterquam, *except*

foedus, eris, n., *treaty*

silentium, silentī, n., *silence*

umquam, *ever*

cessō, 1, *cease*

tueor, 2, tuitus or tūtus, *protect*

urbs, urbis, f., *city* (suburban)

(ops), opis, f., *aid*

procul, *far away*

repentīnus, a, um, *sudden*

omittō, 3, mīsī, missus, *give up*

arx, arcis, f., *citadel*

atrōx, atrōcis, *dreadful* (atrocious)

NOTES

[1] appārēbat: impersonal.   [2] admissōs: English derivative?   [3] prōtinus: synonym of statim.   [4] igitur: synonym of itaque.   [5] factiōnis: English derivative?   [6] Barcīnae: adjective. The Barca family, to which Hannibal belonged, was the most powerful in Carthage.   [7] quod: *the fact that*.   [8] vāna: synonym of vacuus.   [9] adsēnsū: ad + sentiō + tus. English derivative?   [10] iniūstē: adverb.   [11] praepōnat: prae, *before*.   [12] fessōs: = dēfessōs.   [13] patefactum: pateō + faciō.   [14] interiōra: object of tuendō.   [15] in diēs: *day by day*.   [16] crēscit: think of the meaning of augeō. Crēscō is intransitive.   [17] ūnica: synonym of sōlus.   [18] recreāvit: re + creō, here *restore*.   [19] caede: from the stem of caedō, *kill*.   [20] initum: understand est.

Find examples in the passage for the rules on the order of words.

EXERCISE XXIII

Grammar: A. 483; 484, 1, 2; 546; 584; 585.   B. 267, 1, 2; 288, 1, B; 317; 270, 1, *a, b, c*; 318.   G. 509, 1; 510; 585; 530; 531; 654.   H. 543; 544; 545, I, II; 600, II, 1; 644.

Inflection: temptō; rēs; adfīrmāns; suī.

Order of words: when a noun is modified by both an adjective and a genitive, the order often is adjective, genitive, noun, the precise arrangement being determined by emphasis.

Prescribed list:

postquam	redderent	hospitiō	**adimit**
lacrimae	concursus	adferō	inermēs
mānsit	generis	aliquis	**bīnīs**

ALCO AND ALORCUS TRY TO BRING ABOUT PEACE
THE SPEECH OF ALORCUS

Temptāta deinde per duōs est exigua[1] pācis spēs, Alcōnem Saguntīnum et Alorcum Hispānum. Alcō, cum ad Hannibalem noctū trānsīsset, postquam nihil lacrimae movēbant, trānsfuga ex ōrātōre[2] factus, apud hostem mānsit, eum[3] moritūrum esse adfīrmāns quī sub condiciōnibus iīs dē pāce ageret. Postulābātur autem redderent[4] rēs Turdētānīs,[5] trāditōque omnī aurō atque argentō, ēgressī urbe ibi habitārent[6] ubi Poenus iussisset. Alorcus sē pācis eius interpretem fore pollicētur. Erat autem tum mīles Hannibalis, sed pūblicē Saguntīnīs amīcus. Cum concursus omnis generis[7] hominum esset factus, senātus Alorcō datus est, cuius tālis ōrātiō fuit: "Ego prō vetustō[8] hospitiō, quod mihi[9] vōbīscum est, ad vōs vēnī. Neque dum vestrīs vīribus restitistis neque dum auxilia ab Rōmānīs spērāstis, pācis apud vōs mentiōnem fēcī. Postquam nec ab Rōmānīs vōbīs ūlla est spēs nec vestra vōs iam aut arma aut moenia[10] satis dēfendunt, pācem adferō ad vōs magis necessāriam quam aequam. Cuius[11] ita aliqua spēs est, si eam, quem ad modum ut victor fert[12] Hannibal, sīc vōs ut victī audiētis. Urbem, quam captam ferē tōtam habet, adimit, agrōs relinquit. Aurum et argentum omne pūblicum prīvātumque ad sē iubet dēferrī. Corpora vestra, coniugum, ac līberōrum vestrōrum servat inviolāta, sī inermēs cum bīnīs vestīmentīs velītis ab Saguntō exīre. Haec victor hostis imperat; haec, quamquam sunt gravia, fortūna vestra vōbīs suādet. Equidem haud dēspērō,[13] cum omnium potestās eī facta sit, aliquid ex hīs rēbus remissūrum." — LIVY

VOCABULARY

trānsfuga, ae, m., f., *deserter*

morior, morī, mortuus, *die*

aurum, ī, n., *gold*

argentum, ī, n., *silver*

urbs, urbis, f., *city*

interpres, etis, m., f., *messenger*

coniunx, ugis, m., f., *husband, wife*

servō, 1, *preserve*

vestīmentum, ī, n., *garment*

suādeō, 2, suāsī, suāsum, *advise*

quamquam, *although*

equidem, *indeed*

haud, *not*

NOTES

[1] exigua: synonym of **parvus**. [2] **ōrātōre**: **ōrō** + **tor**. English derivative? [3] eum: *that man*. [4] redderent: understand **ut**. [5] **Turdētānīs**: a tribe in southwestern Spain. [6] **habitārent**: think of an English derivative with a prefix. [7] generis: genitive of quality. [8] **vetustō**: synonym of **vetus**. [9] mihi: dative of the possessor. Translate into English by the nominative case, and render **est** by the appropriate form of *have*. [10] moenia: synonym of **mūrus**. [11] cuius: its antecedent is **pācem**. [12] fert: *offers*. [13] dēspērō: dē + spērō.

In the following phrases determine the reason for the position of each word: exigua pācis spēs; trāditō omnī aurō; pācis eius interpretem; concursus omnis generis hominum; vōbīs ūlla est spēs.

EXERCISE XXIV

Grammar: A. 413; 531; 537, 1; 573; 574. B. 222; 282, 1; 284, 1; 300, 1. G. 392; 543, 1; 545, 1; 452, 2; 467. H. 473, 1; 568; 570; 649, II.

Inflection: dēfendō; vīs; magis (compare); ipse.

Order of words: a relative clause usually follows the clause which contains the antecedent of the relative.

Prescribed list:

priusquam	rettulērunt	peditum	**marī**
respondeō	summā	**octingentī**	sescentīs
aggressus	cōnsulerent	centum	comparātīs
praedā	**ēvēnit**	sexāgintā	dīmicātūrum
redierant	sēdecim	maritimus	

THE FALL OF SAGUNTUM ALARMS THE ROMANS AND AROUSES THEM TO GREATER ACTIVITY

Priusquam respōnsum[1] darētur, tumultus ex arce audītur. Turris diū quassāta prōciderat,[2] perque ruīnam eius Hannibal tōtīs vīribus aggressus urbem mōmentō[3] capit,[4] signō datō ut omnēs pūberēs interficerentur. Captum oppidum est cum ingentī praedā. Sub idem ferē tempus et lēgātī, quī redierant ab Carthāgine, Rōmam rettulērunt omnia hostīlia[5] esse, et Saguntī excidium nūntiātum est; tantaque īra in Carthāginiēnsīs metusque[6] dē summā rērum cēpit, ut animī turbātī timērent magis quam cōnsulerent. Nōminātae iam anteā cōnsulibus prōvinciae erant.[7] Cornēliō[8] Hispānia, Semprōniō Āfrica cum Siciliā ēvēnit. Inter cōnsulēs ita cōpiae dīvīsae: Semprōniō datae legiōnēs duae et sociōrum sēdecim mīlia peditum, equitēs mīlle octingentī, nāvēs longae centum sexāgintā. Cum hīs terrestribus maritimīsque cōpiīs Tiberius Semprōnius in Siciliam missus est. Cornēliō minus cōpiārum datum est, quia Lūcius Manlius praetor[9] et ipse cum haud invalidō[10] praesidiō in Galliam mittēbātur. Nāvium maximē Cornēliō numerus dēminūtus est. Neque enim marī ventūrum aut eā parte bellī dīmicātūrum hostem crēdēbant. Datae sunt duae legiōnēs Rōmānae cum suō iūstō equitātū et quattuordecim mīlibus sociōrum peditum, equitibus mīlle sescentīs. Hīs ita comparātīs, ut omnia iūsta ante bellum fierent, lēgātōs in Āfricam mīsērunt ut cognōscerent pūblicōne[11] cōnsiliō Hannibal Saguntum oppugnāvisset, et, sī id fatērentur ac dēfenderent, ut indīcerent populō Carthāginiēnsī bellum. — Livy

VOCABULARY

arx, arcis, f., *citadel*

quassō, 1, *shake*

pūberēs, um, m., *adults*

ingēns, ingentis, *enormous*

excidium, exci'dī, n., *downfall*

īra, ae, f., *wrath* (ire)

turbō, 1, *disturb* (turbulent)

terrestris, e, *of the land*

haud, *not, by no means*

dēminuō, 3, uī, ūtus, *diminish*

crēdō, 3, didī, ditus, *believe*

iūstus, a, um, *appropriate*

fateor, 2, fassus, *acknowledge*

indīcō, 3, dīxī, dictus, *declare*

NOTES

¹ respōnsum: a noun.   ² prōciderat: prō + cadō.   ³ mōmentō: English derivative?   ⁴ capit: historical present.   ⁵ hostīlia: hostis + īlis, *belonging to*.   ⁶ metus: synonym of timor.   ⁷ erant: with nōminātae. ⁸ Cornēliō: Scipio.   ⁹ praetor: one of the chief magistrates of Rome. ¹⁰ invalidō: in + validus from valeō.   ¹¹ pūblicōne: note the particle.

This passage contains clauses of purpose and of result. Do they follow or precede the verbs on which they depend? Which is an exception? Account for its position.

EXERCISE XXV

Grammar: A. 346, *c*; 419, *a*; 546; 573; 574. B. 201, 1, *a*; 227, 1; 288, 1, B; 300, 1. G. 372, R. 2; 409; 585; 452, 2; 467. H. 444; 489; 600, II, 1; 649, II.

Inflection: volō; pater; pūblicus; tū.

Order of words: indirect questions commonly follow the clause on which they depend.

Prescribed list:

postquam	utrum	auctōritāte	sūmite
mandātum erat	iūre	portāmus	iterum
quaesīvisset	licuerit		

THE EMBASSY TO CARTHAGE DOES NOT AVERT THE WAR

Rōmānī postquam Carthāginem vēnērunt, cum senātus datus esset et Quīntus Fabius lēgātus nihil quam ūnum quod mandātum erat quaesīvisset, tum ex Carthāginiēnsibus ūnus : "Ego nōn prī- vātō pūblicōne cōnsiliō Saguntum oppugnātum sit quaerendum¹ cēnseō, sed utrum iūre an iniūriā. Nostra enim haec quaestiō est, quid imperātor nostrō aut suō fēcerit arbitriō. Vōbīscum ūna disceptātiō est, licueritne per foedus fierī. Vōs quod Gāius Lutātius cōnsul prīmō nōbīscum foedus² īcit, quia neque ex auctōritāte patrum nec populī iussū ictum erat, negāvistis vōs eō tenērī; itaque aliud dē integrō³ foedus pūblicō cōnsiliō ictum est. Sī vōs nōn

tenent foedera vestra nisi ex auctōritāte aut iussū vestrō icta, nē
nōs quidem[4] Hasdrubalis foedus, quod nōbīs īnsciīs[5] īcit,[6] obligāre[7]
potuit. Omittite[8] Saguntī atque Hibērī mentiōnem facere, et quod
diū parturit animus vester aliquandō pariat."[9] Tum Rōmānus,
sinū ex togā factō, "Hīc," inquit, "vōbīs bellum et pācem por-
tāmus ; utrum placet, sūmite." Tum succlāmātum[10] est, daret[11]
utrum vellet. Et cum is, iterum sinū effūsō, bellum dare dīxisset,
accipere sē omnēs respondērunt. — LIVY

VOCABULARY

cēnseō, 2, uī, us, *be of opinion*

quaestio, ōnis, f., *inquiry* (question)

arbitrium, arbi'trī, n., *decision*

disceptātiō, ōnis, f., *discussion*

foedus, eris, n., *treaty*

īcō, 3, īcī, ictus, *strike*, (with foedus) *make*

quia, *because*

negō, 1, *say "no," deny* (negative)

integer, gra, grum, *fresh*

parturiō, 4, īvī, ——, *desire to bring forth, meditate*

aliquandō, *at length*

sinus, ūs, m., *fold* (sinuous)

inquam (defective verb), *say*

placeō, 2, uī, itum, *please*

effundō, 3, fūdī, fūsus, *empty*

NOTES

[1] quaerendum : indirect discourse after cēnseō ; the subject is the preceding
clause.   [2] foedus : placed in the relative clause for emphasis. Translate
with eō.   [3] dē integrō : *afresh*. Compare *dē imprōvīsō*.   [4] nē ... quidem :
the emphatic word stands between.   [5] īnsciīs : in + sciō.   [6] īcit : sub-
ject refers to Hasdrubalis.   [7] obligāre : *bind*.   [8] omittite : English deriva-
tive ?   [9] pariat : *let it bring forth*, a subjunctive of exhortation.   [10] suc-
clāmātum : synonym of exclāmō.   [11] daret : this was an imperative in the
words of the Carthaginians.

Explain the derivation of quaestiō, imperātor, auctōritāte.

A ROMAN COIN

EXERCISE XXVI

Grammar: A. 370; 413; 580; 584. B. 187, III; 222; 314, 1; 270, 1, *a*, *b*, *c*; 317. G. 347; 392; 650; 653; 531. H. 429; 473, 1; 642; 643; 617.

Inflection: proficīscor; gladius; omnis; quī.

Order of words: a relative pronoun often stands first in a sentence because its antecedent is in the preceding sentence.

Prescribed list:

servitūtis	praeter	vigiliā	rīpā
moram	vixdum	tergō	dextrīs
loquī	occurreret	adoriātur	anceps
hospitem	āverteret	ēditō	vīcōs
enim			

HANNIBAL ON HIS MARCH TRIES TO CONCILIATE THE GAULS, BUT IS OPPOSED BY A POWERFUL TRIBE

Hannibal cum magnīs cōpiīs Pȳrēnaeum[1] trānsgreditur et castra pōnit. Gallī, quamquam Ītaliae[2] bellum īnferrī audiēbant, tamen quia fāma[3] erat Hispānōs trāns Pȳrēnaeum vī subāctōs esse, metū[4] servitūtis ad arma cōnsternātī[5] conveniunt. Quod ubi Hannibalī nūntiātum est, moram magis quam bellum metuēns[6] ōrātōrēs[7] ad eōs mīsit, loquī sē cum iīs velle, et acceptūrum eōs in castra sua; hospitem[8] enim sē Galliae, nōn hostem vēnisse, nec strictūrum esse gladium, sī per Gallōs licēret, antequam[9] in Ītaliam vēnisset. Interim Pūblius Cornēlius, dux Rōmānus, profectus ab urbe sexāgintā longīs nāvibus praeter ōram Etrūriae[10] pervenit Massiliam[11] et castra pōnit, vixdum satis crēdēns Hannibalem superāvisse Pȳrēnaeōs montīs. Quem ut dē Rhodanī quoque trānsitū[12] agitāre cognōvit, incertus in quō locō eī occurreret, trecentōs equitēs ad explōranda omnia praemittit. Hannibal iam in Volcārum pervēnerat agrum, gentis validae.[13] Ingēns vīs nāvium coācta est. Omnibus rēbus satis comparātīs ad trāiciendum[14] terrēbant ex adversō hostēs. Quōs ut āverteret Hannibal Hannōnem vigiliā prīmā noctis cum

parte cōpiārum adversō flūmine īre iter ūnīus diēī iubet et trā-
iectō flūmine circumdūcere agmen ut hostīs ā tergō adoriātur.
Posterō diē profectī ex locō ēditō fūmō significant trānsīsse et
haud procul[15] abesse. Quod ubi accēpit, Hannibal nāvibus lintri-
busque cōpiās flūmen trādūcit. Gallī occursant in rīpā, quatientēs
scūta super capita, vibrantēs dextrīs tēla. Mox et[16] ipse Hannō
aderat, anceps terror circumstābat. Gallī perrumpunt et in vīcōs
suōs diffugiunt.[17] — LIVY

VOCABULARY

trānsgredior, 3, gressus, *cross*

quamquam, *although*

quia, *because*

subigō, 3, ēgī, āctus, *compel*

stringō, 3, strīnxī, strictus, *draw*

ōra, ae, f., *coast*

crēdō, 3, didī, ditus, *believe* (credible)

gēns, gentis, f., *tribe*

ingēns, ingentis, *huge*

terreō, 2, uī, itus, *alarm*

fūmus, ī, m., *smoke* (fume)

linter, tris, f., *skiff*

occursō, 1, *oppose*

quatiō, 3, ——, quassus, *shake*

super, *above*

vibrō, 1, *brandish* (vibrate)

mox, *presently*

circumstō, 1, stetī, ——, *stand around*

perrumpō, 3, rūpī, ruptus, *break through*

NOTES

[1] Pȳrēnaeum: the Pyrenees mountains.   [2] Ītaliae: for the case, consider
īnferrī.   [3] fāma: synonym of rūmor. English derivative?   [4] metū:
synonym of timor.   [5] cōnsternātī: synonym of commoveō.   [6] metuēns:
compare metū above.   [7] ōrātōrēs: ōrō + tor, *intercessors*. The following
indirect discourse depends upon the idea of saying implied in this word.
[8] hospitem: contrasted with hostem. Notice the emphasis.   [9] antequam:
synonym of priusquam.   [10] Etrūriae: northwest of Rome.   [11] Massiliam:
Marseilles.   [12] trānsitū: trāns + eō + tus, *act of*.   [13] validae: derived
from the verb valeō.   [14] trāiciendum: trāns + iaciō.   [15] haud procul: *by
no means far*.   [16] et: *also*.   [17] diffugiunt: dis + fugiō.

EXERCISE XXVII

Grammar: A. 208, *d*; 418; 452, 1; 531, 2. B. 256, 3; 226; 329; 330; 282, 2. G. 208, 2; 397; 422; 630. H. 302, 6; 480; 615, 1; 590.

Inflection: pōnō; animal; īnferior; quis.

Order of words: clauses of purpose and result commonly follow the clause on which they depend.

Prescribed list:

quīngentōs	via	prope	regiōne
trecentī	quārtīs	inde	propinquō
occurrunt	incolunt	īnferior	renovāvērunt

HANNIBAL ADVANCES TOWARD THE PASSAGE OF THE ALPS

Hannibal Numidās equitēs quīngentōs ad castra Rōmāna mīserat, quī cognōscerent ubi et quantae cōpiae essent et quid parārent. Huic ālae equitum trecentī Rōmānōrum equitēs occurrunt. Ācriter pugnātum est. Fuga Numidārum Rōmānīs victōriam dedit. Rē ita gestā, Hannibal Ītaliam petere cōnstituit. Profectus adversā rīpā Rhodanī mediterrānea Galliae petit, nōn quia rēctior ad Alpīs via esset, sed quia cum Rōmānīs, priusquam in Ītaliam vēnisset, nōn erat in animō proelium committere. Quārtīs castrīs ad īnsulam pervēnit. Incolunt prope Allobrogēs, gēns iam inde nūllā Gallicā gente[1] opibus aut fāmā[2] īnferior. Cum iam Alpīs Hannibal peteret, nōn rēctā regiōne[3] iter īnstituit, sed ad laevam[4] in Tricastīnōs flexit. Inde Alpīs pervēnit. Tum ex propinquō vīsa montium altitūdō nivēsque caelō prope immixtae, hominēs intōnsī et incultī, animālia inanimaque omnia rigentia gelū, terrōrem renovāvērunt. Hannibal cōnsistere signa iussit. Gallīs ad vīsenda loca praemissīs, castra pōnit. — LIVY

VOCABULARY

 āla, ae, f., *squadron*

mediterrānea, ōrum, n., *interior*

quia, *because*

rēctus, a, um, *straight* (rectify)

gēns, gentis, f., *tribe*

(ops), opis, f., *resources*

flectō, 3, flexī, flexus, *turn*

nix, nivis, f., *snow*

caelum, ī, n., *sky*

intōnsus, a, um, *rude*

incultus, a, um, *wild*

inanimus, a, um, *lifeless* (inanimate)

rigeō, 2, uī, ——, *be stiff* (rigid)

gelū, ūs, n., *cold* (congeal)

vīsō, 3, vīsī, vīsus, *look at*

NOTES

[1] gente: for the case, consider īnferior.   [2] fāmā: English derivative?
[3] regiōne: *direction*.   [4] laevam: synonym of sinister.

Explain the derivation of pervēnit, altitūdō, inanima, praemissīs.

EXERCISE XXVIII

Grammar: A. 346, *a*, 3; 405, N. 3; 424. *a*; 537, N. 2.   B. 201, 2;
216, 1; 181, 2; 284, 1.   G. 372; 401, R. 2; 336; 552, end.   H. 442;
468, 1; 417, 1; 570.

Inflection: mālō; saxum; alius; ipse.

Order of words: in a phrase the emphatic word usually stands first.

Prescribed list:

lūce	inde	īnsidiīs	undique
castellīs	cibō	experīrī	fronte
simul	pecoribus	temerē	tergō
vulnerātī	apertō	rōbore	coortī

HANNIBAL ATTEMPTS THE CROSSING OF THE ALPS, BUT IS ATTACKED BY THE MOUNTAINEERS

Prīmā deinde lūce castra mōvit. Montānī signō datō ex castellīs
conveniēbant. Tum vērō simul ab hostibus, simul ab inīquitāte[1]
locōrum Poenī oppugnābantur. Equī maximē īnfēstum agmen
faciēbant, quī territī trepidābant et ictī forte aut vulnerātī adeō
cōnsternābantur ut strāgem ingentem simul hominum ac sarci-
nārum omnis generis[2] facerent. Stetit parumper Hannibal ac suōs
continuit, nē tumultum ac trepidātiōnem[3] augēret. Castellum inde,
quod caput eius regiōnis erat, vīculōsque circumiectōs cēpit, et
captīvō[4] cibō ac pecoribus per trīduum exercitum aluit. Perventum

inde est ad alium populum. Ibi nōn bellō apertō, sed fraude[5] et
īnsidiīs est prope circumventus. Prīncipēs castellōrum ōrātōrēs[6]
ad Poenum veniunt memorantēs[7] amīcitiam mālle quam vim expe-
rīrī Poenōrum ; itaque imperāta factūrōs esse. Hannibal nec temerē
crēdendum[8] ratus,[9] benignē cum respondisset, obsidibus quōs
dabant acceptīs et commeātū quem in viam ipsī dētulerant ūsus,
nēquāquam ut inter pācātōs, compositō[10] agmine, ducēs eōrum
sequitur. Prīmum agmen elephantī et equitēs erant ; ipse post
cum rōbore peditum incēdēbat.[11] Ubi in angustiōrem viam vēnē-
runt, undique ex īnsidiīs barbarī ā fronte, ab tergō coortī comminus
ēminus petunt,[12] saxa ingentia in agmen dēvolvunt. Tunc quoque
ad extrēmum perīculī ac prope perniciem vēnērunt. — LIVY

VOCABULARY

montānus, ī, m., *mountaineer*	parumper, *for a little while*
īnfēstus, a, um, *unsafe*	tumultus, ūs, m., *uprising*
terreō, 2, uī, itus, *frighten*	vīculus, ī, m., *hamlet*
trepidō, 1, *be in alarm*	alō, 3, uī, tus or itus, *feed*
īcō, 3, īcī, ictus, *strike*	mālō, mālle, māluī, ——, *prefer*
forte, *by chance*	crēdō, 3, didī, ditus, *believe* (creed)
adeō, *to such a degree*	benignē, *in a kindly way*
cōnsternō, 1, *terrify*	nēquāquam, *by no means*
strāgēs, is, f., *destruction*	comminus, *hand to hand*
ingēns, ingentis, *huge*	ēminus, *from a distance*
sarcinae, ārum, f., *packs*	dēvolvō, 3, volvī, volūtus, *roll down*
stō, 1, stetī, statum, *stand*	perniciēs, ēī, f., *ruin* (pernicious)

NOTES

[1] inīquitāte: in + aequus + tās. [2] generis: shows quality. [3] trepi-
dātiōnem: trepidō + tiō. [4] captīvō: *captured*. [5] fraude: English deriva-
tive ? [6] ōrātōrēs: ōrō + tor. [7] memorantēs: = dīcentēs. [8] crēdendum:
understand esse. The subject refers to the preceding statement. [9] ratus:
participle of reor, a synonym of putō. [10] compositō: con + pōnō. [11] incē-
dēbat: = prōcēdēbat. [12] petunt: *attack*.

Select phrases from the passage and note the emphasis expressed by
the arrangement of the words in each phrase.

EXERCISE XXIX

Grammar: A. 293; 423, 2; 579; 580; 584. B. 241, 1; 181, 1; 313; 314, 1; 317. G. 291, R. 2; 336; 648; 650; 653. H. 497, 4; 417; 641; 642; 643; 644.

Inflection: iubeō; pedes; lātē (compare); quisquam.

Order of words: words are arranged in clauses or sentences in the order of their importance in the mind of the writer.

Prescribed list:

cunctātur	nōnō	unde	praeceps
angustiās	iugum	cōnsistere	mēnse
praesidiō	bīduum	modo	cōnstat
peditibus	quōdam	prōcēdere	

HANNIBAL REACHES THE SUMMIT OF THE ALPS AND DESCENDS INTO ITALY

Dum cunctātur[1] Hannibal dēmittere[2] agmen in angustiās, quia[3] nōn, ut ipse equitibus praesidiō erat, ita peditibus quicquam ab tergō auxilī reliquī erat, montānī[4] per oblīqua[5] occursantēs, interruptō mediō agmine, viam īnsēdēre, noxque ūna Hannibalī sine equitibus atque impedīmentīs ācta est. Nōnō diē in iugum Alpium pervēnērunt. Bīduum in iugō statīva habita,[6] fessīsque[7] labōre ac pugnandō quiēs data est mīlitibus. Hannibal praegressus signa in prōmunturiō quōdam, unde longē ac lātē prōspectus erat, cōnsistere iussīs mīlitibus Italiam ostentat et dīcit eōs moenia[8] tum trānscendere nōn Italiae modo sed etiam urbis Rōmānae; ūnō proeliō arcem et caput Italiae in manū ac potestāte eōs habitūrōs esse. Prōcēdere inde agmen coepit. Omnis ferē via praeceps, angusta erat, ut sustinēre sē ā lāpsū nōn possent. Hōc modō in Italiam perventum est, quīntō mēnse ā Carthāgine Novā,[9] ut quīdam auctōrēs sunt, quīntō decimō diē Alpibus superātīs. Quantae cōpiae Hannibalī[10] fuerint, nēquāquam inter auctōrēs cōnstat. Quī plūrimum, centum mīlia peditum, vīgintī equitum fuisse scrībunt; quī[11] minimum, vīgintī mīlia peditum, sex equitum. — LIVY

VOCABULARY

occursō, 1, *rush against*

īnsideō, 2, sēdī, sessus, *occupy*

statīva, ōrum, n., *stationary camp*

praegredior, 3, gressus, *advance*

trānscendō, 3, scendī, scēnsus, *climb over*

arx, arcis, f., *citadel*

lāpsus, ūs, m., *slipping* (relapse)

auctor, ōris, m., *author, writer*

nēquāquam, *by no means*

scrībō, 3, scrīpsī, scrīptus, *write*

NOTES

[1] cunctātur: dum, *while*, is regularly followed by the present indicative. What tense is required in the translation?   [2] dēmittere: for the meaning, observe the composition.   [3] quia: = quod.   [4] montānī: mōns + ānus, *pertaining to*.   [5] per oblīqua: used adverbially. Compare dē imprōvīsō.   [6] habita: supply sunt.   [7] fessīs: = dēfessīs.   [8] moenia: referring to the Alps.   [9] Carthāgine Novā: a city in Spain.   [10] Hannibalī: dative of the possessor. Translate it as the subject of the appropriate form of the verb *have*.   [11] quī: understand scrībunt.

Explain the derivation of potestāte, sustinēre, auctōrēs.

EXERCISE XXX

Grammar: A. 374, *a*; 375; 406; 412; 504. B. 189, 1, 2; 217, 1; 220, 1; 338, 1, *a*. G. 354; 355; 398; 399; 428. H. 431, 2; 471; 473, 3; 626.

Inflection: ferō; nāvis; habēns; ego.

Order of words: the beginning of the sentence is usually the place of emphasis.

Prescribed list:

locūtus esse	occurristis	quōcumque	statuit
dextrā	imposuit	rōboris	potius
maria	praemia	praetereā	iterum
urgent	aestāte	superbissima	

AFTER DESCENDING THE ALPS INTO ITALY HANNIBAL ADDRESSES HIS SOLDIERS

Cōntiōne inde advocātā[1] ita apud mīlitēs Hannibal locūtus esse fertur[2]: "Dextrā laevāque[3] duo maria claudunt nūllam nē ad effugium[4] quidem nāvem nōs habentīs; circā[5] Padus flūmen, Padus

maior ac violentior[6] Rhodanō, ab tergō Alpēs urgent, vix integrīs
vōbīs trānsitae. Hīc[7] vincendum[8] aut moriendum, mīlitēs, est, ubi
prīmum hostī occurristis. Et eadem fortūna quae necessitātem
pugnandī imposuit, ea[9] praemia vōbīs victōribus prōpōnit quibus[10]
ampliōra hominēs nē ab deīs quidem immortālibus optāre[11] solent.
Hīc vōbīs terminum labōrum fortūna dedit. Pugnābitis cum exer-
citū tīrōne, hāc ipsā aestāte victō ā Gallīs. Quōcumque circumtulī
oculōs,[12] plēna omnia videō animōrum ac rōboris, veterānum peditem,
generōsissimārum gentium equitēs, vōs sociōs fidēlissimōs[13] fortis-
simōsque, vōs, Carthāginiēnsēs, cum prō patriā tum ob īram
iūstissimam pugnātūrōs. Īnferimus bellum īnfēstīsque signīs dē-
scendimus in Ītaliam. Accendit[14] praetereā et stimulat animōs
dolor,[15] iniūria, indignitās. Crūdēlissima ac superbissima gēns sua[16]
omnia facit. Circumscrībit inclūditque[17] nōs terminīs montium
flūminumque quōs nōn excēdāmus, neque eōs quōs statuit terminōs
observat. Duōs cōnsulēs huius annī, ūnum in Āfricam, alterum in
Hispāniam mīsērunt. Nihil ūsquam nōbīs relictum est nisi quod
armīs vindicāverimus. Vōbīs necesse est fortibus virīs esse et aut
vincere, aut, sī fortūna dubitābit, in proeliō potius quam in fugā
mortem oppetere.[18] Sī hoc bene fīxum omnibus est, iterum dīcam,
vīcistis. Nūllum ācrius contemptū[19] mortis tēlum ad vincendum
hominī ab deīs immortālibus datum est." — LIVY

VOCABULARY

cōntiō, ōnis, m., *assembly*
claudō, 3, clausī, clausus, *shut in*
integer, gra, grum, *fresh*
morior, morī, mortuus, *die*
deus, ī, m., *god*
soleō, 2, solitus, *be accustomed*
tīrō, ōnis, m., *recruit* ; as adj.,
   newly levied
plēnus, a, um, *full* (plenty)
generōsus, a, um, *excellent*
gēns, gentis, f., *tribe*

īra, ae, f., *wrath* (irate)
īnfēstus, a, um, *hostile*
accendō, 3, dī, accēnsus, *kindle*
crūdēlis, e, *cruel*
circumscrībō, 3, scrīpsī, scrīptus,
   confine
ūsquam, *anywhere*
vindicō, 1, *defend*
necesse (indeclinable), *necessary*
fīgō, 3, fīxī, fīxus, *establish*

NOTES

[1] **advocātā**: notice the composition.   [2] **fertur**: *is said*.   [3] **laevā**: synonym of sinister.   [4] **effugium**: ex + fugiō + ium, *act of*.   [5] **circā**: adverb, synonymous with circum.   [6] **violentior**: vīs + lentus, *full of*.   [7] **hīc**: adverb.   [8] **vincendum**: understand vōbīs.   [9] **ea**: subject of prōpōnit.   [10] **quibus**: depends on ampliōra.   [11] **optāre**: synonym of volō.   [12] **oculōs**: English derivative "oculist."   [13] **fidēlissimōs**: fidēs + lis, *pertaining to*. Compare "fidelity."   [14] **accendit**: notice the order of the words in the sentence.   [15] **dolor**: doleō + or, *act of*.   [16] **sua**: predicate adjective, *its own*.   [17] **inclūdit**: in + claudō.   [18] **oppetere**: *meet*.   [19] **contemptū**: depends on ācrius.

Think of English words from **maria, nāvem, urgent, occurristis, patria, circumscrībit, vincere.**

EXERCISE XXXI

Grammar: A. 414; 418; 504; 537, N. 2. B. 223; 226; 338, 1, *a*; 284, 1. G. 403; 397; 428; 552, end. H. 479, 1; 480; 626; 570.

Inflection: pellō; virtūs; superus (compare); quī.

Order of words: demonstrative pronouns and adjectives of quantity tend to precede the nouns which they modify.

Prescribed list:

nēmō	nisi	prius	reddidit
praestitisse	velut	aliēnārum	potentissimus
congressus est	sīc	dēstiterit	incendit

THE CHARACTER OF HANNIBAL AND HIS HATRED OF ROME

Hannibal,[1] Hamilcaris fīlius, Carthāginiēnsis. Sī vērum est, quod nēmō dubitat, ut populus Rōmānus omnīs gentīs virtūte superārit, nōn est īnfitiandum Hannibalem tantō[2] praestitisse cēterōs[3] imperātōrēs prūdentiā, quantō populus Rōmānus antecēdat[4] fortitūdine[5] cūnctās[6] nātiōnēs. Nam quotiēnscumque cum eō[7] congressus est in Ītaliā, semper discessit superior. Quod[8] nisi domī cīvium[9] suōrum invidiā dēbilitātus esset, Rōmānōs vidētur superāre potuisse. Hīc autem velut hērēditāte relictum odium paternum ergā Rōmānōs sīc cōnservāvit ut prius[10] animam quam id dēposuerit, quī quidem,

cum patriā pulsus esset et aliēnārum opum[11] indigēret, numquam
dēstiterit animō bellāre cum Rōmānīs. Nam ut omittam Philippum,
quem absēns[12] hostem reddidit Rōmānīs, omnium iīs temporibus
potentissimus rēx Antiochus fuit. Hunc tantā cupiditāte[13] incendit
bellandī ut ūsque ā rubrō marī arma cōnātus sit īnferre Ītaliae.

NEPOS

VOCABULARY

gēns, gentis, f., *tribe*	ergā, *towards*
īnfitior, 1, *deny*	cōnservō, 1, *keep* (conservation)
quotiēnscumque, *as often as*	anima, ae, f., *life*
semper, *always*	(ops), opis, f., *aid*
invidia, ae, f., *jealousy*	indigeō, 2, uī, ——, *need* (indigent)
dēbilitō, 1, *weaken* (debility)	numquam, *never*
hērēditās, ātis, f., *inheritance*	ūsque, *all the way*
odium, odī, n., *hatred* (odious)	ruber, bra, brum, *red*

NOTES

[1] Hannibal: the verb is understood.   [2] tantō: degree of difference.
[3] cēterōs: synonym of reliquī.   [4] antecēdat: ante + cēdō.   [5] fortitūdine:
fortis + tūdō.   [6] cūnctās: synonym of omnis.   [7] eō: i.e. populō Rōmānō.
[8] quod: *therefore.*   [9] cīvium: cīvitās is formed from the stem.   [10] prius:
sooner.   [11] opum: depends on indigēret.   [12] absēns: he was in Italy at
the time.   [13] cupiditāte: cupidus + tās.

Observe the words in this passage nearly identical with English words:
prūdentiā, fortitūdine, nātiōnēs, superior, odium, paternum, omittam, absēns,
and others.

EXERCISE XXXII

Grammar: A. 415; 419, *a*; 573; 580, *c*. B. 224; 227, 1; 300, 1.
G. 400; 409; 452, 2; 423, N. 5. H. 473, 2; 489; 649, II.

Inflection: quaerō; annus; tenēns: hīc.

Order of words: in a phrase the emphatic word usually stands first.

Prescribed list:

nātō	fidem	īnstituerat	dēbeat
quaesīvit	postulō	iūrāre	quīn
libenter	simul	iūsiūrandum	cēlāris

HANNIBAL'S SPEECH TO ANTIOCHUS ABOUT HIS OATH OF HATRED TO THE ROMANS

Pater meus Hamilcar, puerulō[1] mē, utpote nōn amplius novem annōs[2] nātō, in Hispāniam[3] imperātor proficīscēns Carthāgine, Iovī optimō maximō hostiās immolāvit. Quae dīvīna rēs[4] dum cōnficiēbātur, quaesīvit ā mē vellemne sēcum in castra proficīscī. Id cum libenter accēpissem atque ab eō petere coepissem nē dubitāret dūcere, tum ille, "Faciam," inquit,[5] "sī mihi fidem quam postulō dederis." Simul mē ad āram addūxit apud quam sacrificāre īnstituerat, eamque cēterīs[6] remōtīs tenentem[7] iūrāre iussit numquam mē in amīcitiā cum Rōmānīs fore. Id ego iūsiūrandum patrī datum ūsque ad hanc aetātem ita cōnservāvī ut nēminī dubium esse dēbeat quīn reliquō tempore eādem mente sim futūrus.[8] Quārē sī quid amīcē dē Rōmānīs cōgitābis, nōn imprūdenter fēceris sī mē cēlāris[9]; cum quidem bellum parābis, tē ipsum frūstrāberis sī nōn mē in eō prīncipem posueris. — NEPOS

VOCABULARY

utpote, *as*, *inasmuch as*

hostia, ae, f., *victim*

immolō, 1, *sacrifice*

inquam (defective verb), *say*

āra, ae, f., *altar*

numquam, *never*

ūsque, *all the time*

aetās, ātis, f., *time of life*

cōnservō, 1, *keep*

dubius, a, um, *doubtful*

mēns, mentis, f., *mind* (mental)

cōgitō, 1, *plan*

frūstror, 1, *disappoint*

NOTES

[1] puerulō: puer + ulus, *little*.   [2] annōs: regularly after amplius, though the ablative is the rule after a comparative.   [3] Hispāniam: Spain, where the Second Punic War started.   [4] rēs: refers to hostiās immolāvit.   [5] inquit: regularly inserted after one or more words of a direct quotation.   [6] cēterīs: synonym of reliquī.   [7] tenentem: understand mē.   [8] sim futūrus: this form expresses future time in the subjunctive mood. The subjunctive is used after quīn.   [9] cēlāris: what letters are omitted?

Explain the derivation of imperātor, amīcitiā.

EXERCISE XXXIII

Grammar: A. 370; 400; 423, 1; 568. B. 187, III; 214, 2; 231; 297, 1. G. 347; 390, 2; 393; 553, 1. H. 429; 464; 486; 566.

Inflection: eō; equitātus; factus; is.

Order of words: prepositional phrases usually precede the word which they limit, and are arranged according to the emphasis put on them.

Prescribed list:

praefuit	sīc	nēmō	effēcit
summam	comparāvit	nisi	inermis
dētulit	frātre	praeter	vix
pūblicē	quācumque	concīdit	saucium

HANNIBAL'S SUCCESS WITH HOSTILE TRIBES BEFORE HE REACHES ITALY

Hāc igitur[1] aetāte[2] cum patre in Hispāniam profectus est[3]; cuius post obitum,[4] Hasdrubale imperātōre suffectō, equitātuī omnī praefuit. Hōc quoque interfectō, exercitus summam imperī ad eum dētulit. Id Carthāginem dēlātum pūblicē[5] comprobātum est.[6] Sīc Hannibal minor quīnque et vīgintī annīs[7] nātus imperātor[8] factus, proximō trienniō[9] omnīs gentīs Hispāniae bellō subēgit, Saguntum, foederātam[10] cīvitātem, vī expugnāvit, trīs exercitūs maximōs comparāvit. Ex hīs ūnum in Āfricam mīsit, alterum cum Hasdrubale frātre in Hispāniā relīquit, tertium in Ītaliam sēcum dūxit. Saltum Pȳrēnaeum trānsiit. Quācumque iter fēcit, cum omnibus incolīs[11] cōnflīxit[12]; nēminem nisi victum dīmīsit. Ad Alpīs postquam vēnit, quae Ītaliam ab Galliā sēiungunt,[13] quās nēmō umquam cum exercitū ante eum praeter Herculem Grāium trānsierat, Alpicōs[14] cōnantīs prohibēre trānsitū[15] concīdit, loca patefēcit,[16] itinera mūniit, effēcit ut eā[17] elephantus ōrnātus[18] īre posset quā anteā[19] ūnus homō inermis vix poterat rēpere. Hāc cōpiās trādūxit in Ītaliamque pervēnit. Pugnāverat apud Rhodanum cum Pūbliō Cornēliō Scīpiōne cōnsule eumque pepulerat. Cum hōc eōdem apud Padum[20] dīmicat sauciumque inde ac fugātum[21] dīmittit. — NEPOS

VOCABULARY

aetās, ātis, f., *time of life*	saltus, ūs, m., *mountain pass*
sufficiō, 3, fēcī, fectus, *put in place of*	umquam, *ever*
gēns, gentis, f., *tribe* (gentile)	ōrnō, 1, *equip*
subigō, 3, ēgī, āctus, *subdue*	rēpō, 3, rēpsī, ——, *creep*

NOTES

[1] igitur: = itaque.   [2] aetāte: i. e. novem annōs nātus.   [3] profectus est: subject refers to Hannibal.   [4] obitum: synonym of mors.   [5] pūblicē: i. e. by the government, in spite of his youth.   [6] comprobātum est: con + probō.   [7] annīs: for the case, consider minor.   [8] imperātor: in the predicate with factus.   [9] trienniō: trēs + annus.   [10] foederātam: *allied*.   [11] incolīs: noun from the verb incolō.   [12] cōnflīxit: synonym of pugnō.   [13] sēiungunt: sē, *dis-*, + iungō.   [14] Alpicōs: *dwellers in the Alps*.   [15] trāns-itū: trāns + eō + tus.   [16] patefēcit: pateō + faciō.   [17] eā: understand viā.   [18] ōrnātus: contrasted with inermis below.   [19] anteā: opposite of posteā.   [20] Padum: the Po river.   [21] fugātum: *routed*.

EXERCISE XXXIV

Grammar: A. 452, 1; 509; 510; 531, *a.* B. 329; 330; 340, 1, 2; 282, 1, *a.* G. 422; 435; 436; 545, 2. H. 609, 1; 633; 635; 568, 7.

Inflection: possum; aciēs; uterque; quī.

Order of words: an appositive regularly follows the noun which it limits.

Prescribed list:

dextrō	aliquot	cupīvit	simul
aequē	praetereā	valentior	excesserant
premerētur	restitit	congraderētur	contrāxit
hinc	iterum	bīduō	

HANNIBAL DEFEATS THE ROMANS BOTH IN ITALY AND IN AFRICA

Per Ligurēs[1] Appennīnum trānsiit, petēns Etrūriam. Hōc in itinere adeō gravī morbō afficitur[2] oculōrum ut posteā numquam dextrō aequē bene ūsus sit. Quā valētūdine[3] cum etiamtum

premerētur lectīcāque ferrētur, Gāium Flāminium cōnsulem apud
Trasumēnum[4] cum exercitū īnsidiīs circumventum occīdit,[5] neque
multō post[6] Gāium Centēnium praetōrem cum dēlēctā manū
saltūs occupantem. Hinc in Āpūliam[7] pervēnit. Ibi obviam eī
vēnērunt[8] duo cōnsulēs, Gāius Terentius et Lūcius Aemilius.
Utrīusque exercitūs ūnō proeliō fugāvit, Paulum cōnsulem occīdit
et aliquot praetereā cōnsulārīs, in iīs Gnaeum Servīlium Geminum,
quī superiōre annō fuerat cōnsul. Longum est omnia ēnumerāre[9]
proelia. Quamdiū in Ītaliā fuit, nēmō eī in aciē restitit, nēmō
adversus eum post Cannēnsem[10] pugnam in campō castra posuit.
Hinc invictus[11] patriam dēfēnsum[12] revocātus bellum gessit adversus
Pūblium Scīpiōnem, fīlium eius Scīpiōnis quem ipse prīmō apud
Rhodanum, iterum apud Padum,[13] tertiō apud Trebiam[14] fugārat.
Cum hōc, exhaustīs iam patriae facultātibus, cupīvit impraesentiārum
bellum compōnere, quō valentior posteā congrederētur. In collo-
quium convēnit[15]; condiciōnēs nōn convēnērunt. Post id factum
paucīs diēbus apud Zamam[16] cum eōdem cōnflīxit[17]; pulsus (incrēdi-
bile dictū) bīduō et duābus noctibus Hadrūmētum pervēnit, quod
abest ab Zamā circiter mīlia passuum trecenta. In hāc fugā
Numidae, quī simul cum eō ex aciē excesserant, īnsidiātī sunt[18] eī;
quōs nōn sōlum effūgit[19] sed etiam ipsōs oppressit. Hadrūmētī
reliquōs ē fugā collēgit; novīs dīlēctibus paucīs diēbus multōs
contrāxit. — NEPOS

VOCABULARY

adeō, *so*

morbus, ī, m., *disease* (morbid)

oculus, ī, m., *eye* (ocular)

numquam, *never*

lectīca, ae, f., *litter*

saltus, ūs, m., *mountain pass*

fugō, 1, *put to flight*

cōnsulāris, is, m., *ex-consul*

ēnumerō, 1, *relate*

quamdiū, *as long as*

campus, ī, m., *field*

revocō, 1, *recall*

exhauriō, 4, hausī, haustus, *use up*

patria, ae, f., *native land*

impraesentiārum, *for the present*

compōnō, 3, posuī, positus, *settle*
(compose)

colligō, 3, lēgī, lēctus, *collect*

dīlēctus, ūs, m., *levy*

NOTES

[1] **Ligurēs**: a tribe in the northwestern part of Italy.   [2] **afficitur**: English derivative?   [3] **valētūdine**: valeō + tūdō. It means *a state of health*, either good or bad, according to the context.   [4] **Trasumēnum**: a lake in Etruria. [5] **occīdit**: did he do this *in spite of* premerētur and ferrētur, or *because of* those acts?   [6] **post**: adverb.   [7] **Āpūliam**: in southern Italy.   [8] **obviam vēnērunt**: *met*.   [9] **ēnumerāre**: English derivative?   [10] **Cannēnsem**: *of Cannæ*. Here the Romans met their worst defeat at the hands of Hannibal, in 216 B.C.   [11] **invictus**: compare English "inconvenient."   [12] **dēfēnsum**: supine with **revocātus**.   [13] **Padum**: the Po.   [14] **Trebiam**: a river of northern Italy. Here Hannibal defeated the Romans in 218 B.C.   [15] **convēnit**: *an agreement was made*.   [16] **Zamam**: a town in northern Africa, near which Scipio finally defeated Hannibal in 202 B.C.   [17] **cōnflīxit**: synonym of pugnō.   [18] **īnsidiātī sunt**: deponent formed from the stem of **īnsidiae**.   [19] **effūgit**: ex + fugiō.

EXERCISE XXXV

Grammar: A. 427, 1, 2, 3; 540, 2; 563. B. 229, 1; 182, 1; 228, 1, *a*; 232, 1; 286, 1; 295, 1. G. 391; 337; 411; 386; 541; 546. H. 491, II, 1, 2, 3; 588, II; 565.

Inflection: fīō; mūnus; ācriter; ille.

Order of words: the dependent clauses are arranged in the sentence in the order of their importance in the mind of the writer.

Prescribed list:

item	simul	susceptum	creābantur
frāter	cōnsultō	hūc	parī
grātiās	rogārent	rediit	praebuit
pācem	operā	bīnī	penderētur
corōnā			

THE CARTHAGINIANS MAKE PEACE WITH THE ROMANS, BUT HANNIBAL FIGHTS ON UNTIL RECALLED

Cum in apparandō[1] ācerrimē esset occupātus, Carthāginiēnsēs bellum cum Rōmānīs composuērunt. Ille nihilō[2] sētius exercituī posteā praefuit rēsque in Āfricā gessit itemque Māgō frāter eius ūsque ad Pūblium Sulpicium Gāium Aurēlium[3] cōnsulēs. Hīs enim magistrātibus lēgātī Carthāginiēnsēs Rōmam vēnērunt, quī senātuī

populōque Rōmānō grātiās agerent[4] quod cum iīs pācem fēcissent, ob eamque rem corōnā aureā eōs dōnārent, simulque peterent ut obsidēs eōrum Fregellīs[5] essent captīvīque redderentur. Hīs ex senātūs cōnsultō respōnsum est: mūnus eōrum grātum acceptumque esse; obsidēs, quō locō rogārent, futūrōs; captīvōs nōn remissūrōs, quod Hannibalem, cuius operā susceptum bellum foret, inimīcissimum[6] nōminī Rōmānō, etiam nunc cum imperiō apud exercitum habērent[7] itemque frātrem eius Māgōnem. Hōc respōnsō cognitō Carthāginiēnsēs Hannibalem domum et Māgōnem revocārunt. Hūc ut rediit, rēx factus est, postquam imperātor fuerat annō secundō et vīcēsimō; ut[8] enim Rōmae cōnsulēs, sīc[8] Carthāgine quotannīs annuī[9] bīnī rēgēs creābantur. In eō magistrātū parī dīligentiā sē Hannibal praebuit ac[10] fuerat in bellō. Namque effēcit ex novīs vectīgālibus nōn sōlum ut esset pecūnia quae Rōmānīs ex foedere penderētur, sed etiam superesset quae in aerāriō repōnerētur.[11] — NEPOS

VOCABULARY

compōnō, 3, posuī, positus, *settle*	revocō, 1, *recall*
sētius, *the less*	vīcēsimus, a, um, *twentieth*
ūsque, *all the time*	quotannīs, *yearly*
aureus, a, um, *golden*	vectīgal, is, n., *revenue*
dōnō, 1, *present* (donor)	pecūnia, ae, f., *money* (pecuniary)
grātus, a, um, *pleasing*	foedus, eris, n., *treaty*
nunc, *now*	aerārium, aerārī, n., *treasury*

NOTES

[1] apparandō: ad + parō.   [2] nihilō: = nihil. For the case, consider sētius. [3] Sulpicium, Aurēlium: the Romans designated a year by the names of the consuls.   [4] agerent: states the purpose of vēnērunt.   [5] Fregellīs: *Fregellæ*, a city not far from Rome.   [6] inimīcissimum: in + amīcus. [7] habērent: the subject refers to the Carthaginians.   [8] ut, sīc: introducing ideas which are compared.   [9] annuī: adjective from annus. Compare the English "annual."   [10] ac: *as.*   [11] repōnerētur: re + pōnō.

What is the force of the prefix in *ap*parandō, *prae*fuit, *red*derentur, *re*missūrōs, *sus*ceptum, *revo*cārunt?

EXERCISE XXXVI

Grammar: A. 426, 1, 2, 3; 427, 1, 2, 3; 530; 531, 2. B. 229, 1; 182, 1, 2; 228, 1, *a*; 232, 1; 282, 1, *a*. G. 390, 1; 337, 1; 385; 386; 411; 545, 2. H. 491, I, 1, 2, 3, II, 1, 2, 3; 568, 1.

Inflection: persuādeō; nāvis; bonus (compare); īdem.

Order of words: prepositions regularly precede the words which they govern.

Prescribed list:

deinde	profūgit	indūcerentur	**ventīs**
priusquam	at	hūc	duplex
ascendit	postquam	**vēla**	namque
clam			

HANNIBAL FLEES FROM CARTHAGE AND TRIES TO BRING ON ANOTHER WAR

Deinde Mārcō Claudiō Lūciō Fūriō cōnsulibus,[1] Rōmā lēgātī Carthāginem vēnērunt. Hōs Hannibal ratus suī exposcendi[2] grātiā missōs,[3] priusquam iīs senātus darētur, nāvem ascendit clam atque in Syriam ad Antiochum profūgit. Hāc rē palam[4] factā, Poenī nāvīs duās, quae eum comprehenderent, sī possent cōnsequī, mīsērunt; bona[5] eius pūblicārunt, domum ā fundāmentīs disiēcērunt,[6] ipsum exsulem iūdicārunt. At Hannibal annō tertiō postquam domō profūgerat, Lūciō Cornēliō Quīntō Minuciō cōnsulibus, cum quīnque nāvibus Āfricam accessit in fīnibus Cȳrēnaeōrum, sī forte Carthāginiēnsēs ad bellum Antiochī spē fīdūciāque[7] indūcerentur, cui iam persuāserat ut cum exercitibus in Ītaliam proficīscerētur. Hūc Māgōnem frātrem excīvit. Id ubi Poenī rescīvērunt,[8] Māgōnem eādem quā frātrem absentem affēcērunt poenā. Illī dēspērātīs[9] rēbus cum solvissent nāvēs ac vēla ventīs dedissent, Hannibal ad Antiochum pervēnit. Dē Māgōnis interitū[10] duplex memoria[11] prōdita est; namque aliī naufragiō, aliī ā servulīs ipsīus interfectum[12] eum scrīptum relīquērunt. Antiochus autem paucīs nāvibus adversus Rhodiōrum[13] classem pugnāvit. — NEPOS

VOCABULARY

reor, 2, ratus, *think*

comprehendō, 3, hendī, hēnsus, *seize*

pūblicō, 1, *confiscate*

fundāmentum, ī, n., *foundation*

exsul, ulis, m., f., *exile*

forte, *by chance*

exciō, 4, īvī, ītus, *call forth*

poena, ae, f., *punishment*

solvō, 3, solvī, solūtus, *loose*

prōdō, 3, didī, ditus, *hand down*

naufragium, naufra'gī, n., *shipwreck*

servulus, ī, m., *slave*

scrībō, 3, scrīpsī, scrīptus, *write*

NOTES

[1] cōnsulibus: ablative absolute.   [2] exposcendī: ex + poscō; synonym of petō.   [3] missōs: understand esse.   [4] palam: the opposite of clam.   [5] bona: used as a noun.   [6] disiēcērunt: observe the composition.   [7] fīdūciā: synonym of fidēs.   [8] rescīvērunt: synonym of cognōscō.   [9] dēspērātīs: dē + spērō. English derivative?   [10] interitū: synonym of mors.   [11] memoria: *account*.   [12] interfectum: understand esse, and make eum the subject.   [13] Rhodiōrum: the people of Rhodes.

Determine from their position whether these words are emphatic: hōs, clam, Carthāginiēnsēs, poenā, pervēnit.

EXERCISE XXXVII

Grammar: A. 409, *a*; 549; 564; 574. B. 218, 8; 286, 2; 296, 2; 300, 1. G. 405; 586; 550, 2; 467. H. 477, II; 598; 567, I; 649, II.

Inflection: capiō; cōnsilium; simulāns; quisquam.

Order of words: adjectives of quantity normally precede their nouns.

Prescribed list:

dēderētur	nisi	sciēbat	tolleret
potestātem	prōvīdisset	exīsse	quisquam
cōnferret	enim	complet	conciliābat
callidissimus	portābat	dēpōnit	

HANNIBAL CONCEALS HIS TREASURE

Antiochō fugātō, verēns nē dēderētur, quod[1] sine dubiō accidisset, sī suī fēcisset potestātem,[2] Crētam ad Gortȳniōs[3] vēnit, ut ibi, quō sē cōnferret, cōnsīderāret. Vīdit autem vir[4] omnium callidissimus in magnō sē fore perīculō, nisi quid prōvīdisset, propter avāritiam

Crētēnsium[5]: magnam enim sēcum pecūniam portābat, dē quā sciēbat exīsse fāmam. Itaque capit[6] tāle cōnsilium.[7] Amphorās complūrīs complet plumbō, summās operit aurō et argentō. Hās praesentibus prīncipibus dēpōnit in templō Diānae, simulāns sē suās fortūnās illōrum[8] fideī crēdere. Hīs in errōrem inductīs,[9] statuās aēneās, quās sēcum portābat, omnī suā pecūniā complet eāsque in prōpatulō domī abicit.[10] Gortȳniī templum magnā cūrā[11] custōdiunt, nōn tam ā cēterīs[12] quam ab Hannibale, nē ille īnscientibus[13] iīs tolleret sua sēcumque dūceret. Sīc cōnservātīs suīs rēbus Poenus, illūsīs Crētēnsibus omnibus, ad Prūsiam[14] in Pontum pervēnit. Apud quem eōdem animō fuit ergā Ītaliam, neque aliud quicquam ēgit quam rēgem armāvit et exercuit adversus Rōmānōs. Quem[15] cum vidēret domesticīs opibus minus esse rōbustum, conciliābat cēterōs rēgēs, adiungēbat bellicōsās nātiōnēs. — Nepos

VOCABULARY

fugō, 1, *put to flight*
dubius, a, um, *doubtful*
avāritia, ae, f., *greed* (avaricious)
pecūnia, ae, f., *money*
fāma, ae, f., *report* (famous)
tālis, e, *such*
amphora, ae, f., *jar*
plumbum, ī, n., *lead*
operiō, 4, uī, tus, *cover*
aurum, ī, n., *gold*
argentum, ī, n., *silver*

simulō, 1, *pretend*
crēdō, 3, didī, ditus, *trust* (credence)
aēneus, a, um, *bronze*
prōpatulum, ī, n., *open court*
custōdiō, 4, īvī, ītus, *guard* (custody)
cōnservō, 1, *save*
illūdō, 3, lūsī, lūsus, *make sport of*
ergā, *towards*
exerceō, 2, uī, itus, *arouse*
(ops), opis, f., *means*
bellicōsus, a, um, *warlike*

NOTES

[1] quod: refers to nē dēderētur. [2] suī potestātem: *a chance at him.*
[3] Gortȳniōs: people of the city of Gortyna in Crete. [4] vir: not the subject of vīdit. What then is its syntax? [5] Crētēnsium: compare Carthāginiēnsium. [6] capit: *adopts.* [7] cōnsilium: what follows explains this.
[8] illōrum: refers to prīncipibus. [9] inductīs: observe the composition.
[10] abicit: observe the composition; ab = dē. [11] cūrā: related to the verb

cūrō.   [12] cēterīs: synonym of reliquī.   [13] īnscientibus: observe the composition. Compare the English "secure" and "insecure."   [14] Prūsiam: Prusias, the king.   [15] quem: not the object of vidēret.

Determine the force of the prefix in *prō*vīdisset, *dē*pōnit, *in*ductīs, *ab*icit, *ad*iungēbat.

EXERCISE XXXVIII

Grammar: A. 349; 563; 564; 569, 2. B. 204, 1; 295, 1; 296, 2; 297, 2. G. 374; 546, 2; 550, 1, 2; 553, 3. H. 450; 451, 1; 565; 567, 1; 571, 1.

Inflection: fīō; domus; facile (compare); suī.

Order of words: the modifying phrase usually precedes the word which it modifies.

Prescribed list:

dum	ausus est	castellō	sēnsit
cāsū	recūsāvit	mūnerī	aliēnō
rēgnō	iūs	aedificārat	prīstinus
dētulit	hospitī	circumdedissent	sūmpsit
īnsidiīs			

HOW THE ROMANS BROUGHT ABOUT HANNIBAL'S DEATH

Quae dum in Asiā geruntur, accidit cāsū ut lēgātī Prūsiae[1] Rōmae apud[2] Titum Quīnctium Flāminīnum cōnsulārem cēnārent, atque, ibi dē Hannibale mentiōne factā, ex iīs ūnus dīceret eum in Prūsiae rēgnō esse. Id posterō diē Flāminīnus senātuī dētulit. Patrēs cōnscrīptī,[3] quī Hannibale vīvō numquam sē sine īnsidiīs futūrōs exīstimārent,[4] lēgātōs in Bīthȳniam mīsērunt, in iīs Flāminīnum, quī ab rēge peterent nē inimīcissimum[5] suum sēcum habēret sibique dēderet. Hīs Prūsiās negāre ausus nōn est; illud recūsāvit, nē id ā sē fierī postulārent quod adversus iūs hospitī esset; ipsī, sī possent, comprehenderent[6]; locum ubi esset facile inventūrōs.[7] Hannibal enim ūnō locō sē tenēbat in castellō, quod eī ā rēge datum erat mūnerī,[8] idque sīc aedificārat ut in omnibus partibus aedificī exitūs habēret, scīlicet verēns nē ūsū venīret[9] quod accidit. Hūc cum lēgātī Rōmānōrum vēnissent ac multitūdine

domum eius circumdedissent, puer ab iānuā prōspiciēns Hannibalī
dīxit plūrīs praeter cōnsuētūdinem armātōs appārēre. Quī imperāvit
eī ut omnīs forīs[10] aedificī circumīret ac properē[11] sibi nūntiāret
num eōdem modō undique obsidērētur. Puer cum celeriter quid
esset renūntiāsset omnīsque exitūs occupātōs ostendisset, sēnsit
id nōn fortuītō[12] factum,[13] sed sē petī neque sibi diūtius vītam
esse retinendam. Quam nē aliēnō arbitriō dīmitteret, memor prīstī-
nārum virtūtum, venēnum, quod semper sēcum habēre cōnsuērat,
sūmpsit. — NEPOS

VOCABULARY

cōnsulāris, is, m., *ex-consul*

cēnō, 1, *dine*

vīvus, a, um, *alive*

numquam, *never*

negō, 1, *say "no"* (negative)

comprehendō, 3, hendī, hēnsus, *seize*

scīlicet, *evidently*

iānua, ae, f., *door*

prōspiciō, 3, spexī, spectus, *watch*

appāreō, 2, uī, ——, *appear*

num, *whether*

obsideō, 2, sēdī, sessus, *beset*

vīta, ae, f., *life*

arbitrium, arbi′trī, n., *will*

memor, memoris, *mindful*

venēnum, ī, n., *poison*

semper, *always*

NOTES

[1] Prūsiae: genitive; Prusias, king of the state in which Hannibal was
then living.   [2] apud: *at the house of*.   [3] patrēs cōnscrīptī: a term ap-
plied to the senators; cōnscrīptī, *enrolled*.   [4] quī . . . exīstimārent: gives
a reason for mīsērunt.   [5] inimīcissimum: in + amīcus, *greatest enemy*.
[6] ipsī . . . comprehenderent: indirect discourse, depending on recūsāvit;
comprehenderent represents an imperative in the words of Prusias.
[7] inventūrōs: in + veniō; in, *upon*.   [8] mūnerī: dative showing purpose.
[9] ūsū venīret: = accideret.   [10] forīs: synonym of iānua.   [11] properē:
synonym of celeriter.   [12] fortuītō: synonym of cāsū.   [13] factum:
understand esse.

Think of English words from accidit, mīsērunt, peterent, negāre, inven-
tūrōs, prōspiciēns.

EXERCISE XXXIX

Grammar: A. 367; 372; 415; 546. B. 187, II, *a*, *b*; 224; 288, 1, B.
G. 346, R. 1; 400; 585. H. 426, 1, 3; 473, 2; 600, II, 1.

Inflection: gerō; adventus; superior; ipse.

Order of words: in the ablative absolute the emphatic word, usually
the noun, stands first.

Prescribed list:

marī	occāsiōne	īnsulās	refectae
terrā	lacessīvit	statuērunt	renovāre
cessit	paene	etsī	nisi
nocendī	āmīsissent	statim	trādere
saepe	classe		

HAMILCAR, THE CARTHAGINIAN, AGREES TO PEACE
WITH THE ROMANS, BUT HOPES FOR A CHANCE TO
FIGHT AGAIN

Hamilcar, Hannibalis[1] fīlius, cognōmine Barca, Carthāginiēnsis,
prīmō Pūnicō bellō, sed temporibus[2] extrēmīs, admodum adulēs-
centulus in Siciliā praeesse coepit exercituī. Cum[3] ante eius
adventum et marī et terrā male rēs gererentur Carthāginiēnsium,
ipse ubi adfuit numquam hostī cessit neque locum[4] nocendī dedit,
saepeque ē contrāriō occāsiōne datā lacessīvit[5] semperque superior
discessit. Quō factō, cum paene omnia in Siciliā Poenī āmīsissent,
ille Erycem[6] sīc dēfendit ut bellum eō locō gestum nōn vidērētur.
Interim Carthāginiēnsēs classe[7] apud īnsulās Aegātēs ā Gāiō
Lutātiō, cōnsule Rōmānōrum, superātī statuērunt bellī facere fīnem,
eamque rem arbitriō permīsērunt Hamilcaris. Ille etsī flagrābat
bellandī cupiditāte,[8] tamen pācī serviendum[9] putāvit, quod patriam
exhaustam sūmptibus[10] diūtius calamitātēs bellī ferre nōn posse
intellegēbat; sed ita ut statim mente agitāret,[11] sī paulum modo
rēs essent refectae, bellum renovāre Rōmānōsque armīs persequī[12]
dōnicum aut virtūte vīcissent aut victī manūs dedissent. Hōc cōn-
siliō pācem conciliāvit. In quō[13] tantā fuit ferōciā,[14] cum Catulus

negāret bellum compositūrum[15] nisi ille[16] cum suīs, quī Erycem tenērent, armīs relictīs Siciliā dēcēderent, ut succumbente patriā ipse peritūrum sē potius dīxerit[17] quam cum tantō flāgitiō domum redīret; nōn enim suae esse virtūtis[18] arma ā patriā accepta adversus hostīs adversāriīs trādere. Huius[19] pertināciae cessit Catulus. — Nepos

VOCABULARY

cognōmen, inis, n., *surname*

admodum, *mere*

male, *badly*

adsum, esse, fuī, ——, *be present*

numquam, *never*

semper, *always*

arbitrium, arbi′trī, n., *management*

flagrō, 1, *be on fire*

serviō, 4, ivī, ītum, *serve, aim at*

exhauriō, 4, hausī, haustus, *wear out*

sūmptus, ūs, m., *expense*

mēns, mentis, f., *mind*

dōnicum, *until*

conciliō, 1, *bring about*

ferōcia, ae, f., *fierceness*

negō, 1, *say not*

compōnō, 3, posuī, positus, *bring to an end*

succumbō, 3, cubuī, ——, *fall*

patria, ae, f., *country*

pereō, 4, iī, itūrus, *perish*

potius, *rather*

flāgitium, flāgi′tī, n., *wrongdoing*

pertinācia, ae, f., *obstinacy*

NOTES

[1] Hannibalis: not the Hannibal mentioned elsewhere, who was Hamilcar's son. [2] temporibus: i.e. huius bellī. [3] cum: concessive. [4] locum: = occāsiō. [5] lacessīvit: understand hostīs. [6] Erycem: *Eryx*, a town in Sicily. [7] classe: states the means of superātī. [8] cupiditāte: cupidus + tās. [9] serviendum: understand sibi. [10] sūmptibus: states the cause of exhaustam. [11] mente agitāret: nearly equal to putāret, but has also the idea of *intend*. [12] persequī: composition? [13] quō: refers to pācem conciliāvit. [14] ferōciā: describes the subject of fuit. [15] compositūrum: understand sē. [16] ille: i.e. Hamilcar. [17] ut ... dīxerit: keep in mind tantā above. [18] virtūtis: shows possession, the thing possessed being arma . . . trādere. [19] huius: i.e. Hamilcar.

EXERCISE XL

Grammar: A. 305; 404; 540, 1; 549. B. 250; 219; 286, 1, 2.
G. 614; 408; 540; 586. H, 396; 475; 588, 1; 598.

Inflection: oppugnō; imperātor; plūs; hīc.

Order of words: a noun depending on another noun usually stands next to it, either before or after it, according to the emphasis.

Prescribed list:

aliter	perterritī	amplius	reddidit
namque	impetrārunt	compulit	reperīret
parī	prope	valentissima	praetereā
nisi	mūrīs	restituit	mōrēs
vīgintī			

HAMILCAR FINDS CARTHAGE BESET BY ENEMIES, BUT DEFEATS THEM AND THEN SETS OUT FOR SPAIN

At ille ut Carthāginem vēnit, multō aliter ac[1] spērārat[2] rem pūblicam sē habentem[3] cognōvit. Namque diūturnitāte[4] externī malī tantum exārsit intestīnum bellum ut numquam in parī perīculō fuerit Carthāgō, nisi cum dēlēta est. Prīmō mercēnnāriī mīlitēs quibus adversus Rōmānōs ūsī erant dēscīvērunt, quōrum numerus erat vīgintī mīlium. Iī tōtam abaliēnārunt Āfricam, ipsam Carthāginem oppugnārunt. Quibus malīs adeō[5] sunt Poenī perterritī ut etiam auxilia ab Rōmānīs petierint; eaque[6] impetrārunt. Sed extrēmō, cum prope iam ad dēspērātiōnem[7] pervēnissent, Hamilcarem imperātōrem fēcērunt. Is nōn sōlum hostīs ā mūrīs Carthāginis remōvit, cum amplius centum mīlia facta essent armātōrum, sed etiam eō[8] compulit ut locōrum angustiīs clausī plūrēs famē quam ferrō[9] interīrent.[10] Omnia oppida abaliēnāta, in iīs Uticam atque Hippōnem, valentissima tōtīus Āfricae, restituit patriae. Neque eō fuit contentus, sed etiam fīnīs imperī prōpāgāvit,[11] tōtā Āfricā[12] tantum ōtium[13] reddidit ut nūllum in eā bellum vidērētur multīs annīs fuisse. Rēbus hīs ex sententiā perāctīs fīdentī animō atque īnfēstō Rōmānīs, quō[14] facilius causam bellandī

reperīret, effēcit ut imperātor cum exercitū in Hispāniam mitterētur, eōque sēcum dūxit fīlium Hannibalem annōrum novem. Erat praetereā cum eō adulēscēns illūstris, fōrmōsus, Hasdrubal. Huic ille fīliam suam in mātrimōnium dedit. Dē hōc ideō mentiōnem fēcimus, quod Hamilcare occīsō ille exercituī praefuit rēsque magnās gessit, et prīnceps largītiōne vetustōs[15] pervertit mōrēs Carthāginiēnsium, eiusdemque post mortem Hannibal ab exercitū accēpit imperium. — NEPOS

VOCABULARY

diūturnitās, ātis, f., *length*

malum, ī, n., *misfortune*

exārdēscō, 3, ārsī, ———, *blaze forth*

intestīnus, a, um, *civil*

numquam, *never*

dēleō, 2, ēvī, ētus, *destroy*

mercēnnārius, a, um, *hired*

dēscīscō, 3, scīvī, ———, *desert*

abaliēnō, 1, *make hostile*

claudō, 3, clausī, clausus, *hem in*

famēs, is, f., *hunger*

patria, ae, f., *country*

fīdēns, fīdentis, *confident*

īnfēstus, a, um, *hostile*

adulēscēns, centis, m., *youth*

illūstris, e, *distinguished*

fōrmōsus, a, um, *handsome*

mātrimōnium, mātrimōnī, n., *marriage*

ideō, *for this reason*

largītiō, ōnis, f., *lavish giving*

pervertō, 3, vertī, versus, *corrupt*

NOTES

[1] ac: *than*.   [2] spērārat: note the shortened form. There are others in the passage.   [3] sē habentem: *in a condition*.   [4] diūturnitāte: states the cause of exārsit.   [5] adeō: synonym of ita.   [6] ea: refers to auxilia.   [7] dēspērātiōnem: dē + spērō + tiō.   [8] eō: *to such a point*.   [9] ferrō: used for gladius.   [10] interīrent: nearly equivalent here to interficerentur.   [11] prōpāgāvit: synonym of augeō.   [12] Āfricā: in is omitted with tōtā.   [13] ōtium: nearly equivalent to pāx.   [14] quō: introduces a purpose clause when the clause contains a comparative.   [15] vetustōs: synonym of vetus.

GALLIC SWORD-BLADE

EXERCISE XLI

Grammar: A. 376; 578; 579; 580. B. 188, 1; 313; 314, 1; 331, 1. G. 350, 2; 648; 650. H. 425, 4; 641; 642; 643.

Inflection: cōgō; classis; vetus; suus.

Order of words: the normal order of the sentence is (1) subject, (2) modifiers of subject, (3) modifiers of verb, (4) verb.

Prescribed list:

ulteriōrem	complēverat	mandātīs	castellīs
quō	adulēscentīs	portās	īnstituerant
septem	officia	fidē	reficiēbant

CÆSAR FINDS THAT THE CITY OF MASSILIA IS MAKING READY TO OPPOSE HIM

Cæsar and Pompey once had been friends. Indeed, Pompey had married Cæsar's daughter Julia, and had been closely associated with him in some of his greatest undertakings. But the changing circumstances of the times and Julia's death had weakened the ties that once bound them, and they were now enemies. Cæsar has just been in Rome, and through the senate has tried to bring about a reconciliation with Pompey, but in vain.

Caesar ab urbe proficīscitur atque in ulteriōrem Galliam pervēnit. Quō cum vēnisset, cognōscit missum[1] in Hispāniam[2] ā Pompēiō Vibullium Rūfum, quem paucīs ante diēbus Corfīniō[3] captum[4] ipse dīmīserat; profectum item Domitium[5] ad occupandam Massiliam[6] nāvibus āctuāriīs septem, quās Igilī[7] et in Cosānō[8] ā prīvātīs coāctās servīs, lībertīs, colōnīs suīs complēverat; praemissōs etiam lēgātōs Massiliēnsīs[9] domum, nōbilīs adulēscentīs, quōs ab urbe discēdēns Pompēius erat adhortātus[10] nē nova Caesaris officia veterum suō-rum[11] beneficiōrum in eōs memoriam expellerent. Quibus mandātīs acceptīs Massiliēnsēs portās Caesarī[12] clauserant; Albicōs, barbarōs hominēs, quī in eōrum fidē antīquitus erant montīsque suprā Massiliam incolēbant, ad sē vocāverant; frūmentum ex fīnitimīs regiōnibus atque ex omnibus castellīs in urbem convexerant; armōrum officīnās in urbe īnstituerant; mūrōs, portās, classem reficiēbant. — DE BELLO CIVILI, I, 33, 34

VOCABULARY

āctuārius, a, um, *swift*

servus, ī, m., *slave*

lībertus, ī, m., *freedman*

colōnus, ī, m., *colonist*

claudō, 3, clausī, clausus, *shut*

antīquitus, *in olden times*

vocō, 1, *summon*

convehō, 3, vexī, vectus, *collect*

officīna, ae, f., *manufactory*

NOTES

[1] **missum**: understand **esse**. Why?   [2] **Hispāniam**: *Spain*.   [3] **Corfīniō**: a town in central Italy.   [4] **captum**: translate by a temporal clause. [5] **Domitium**: an adherent of Pompey, afterwards in command of the defense of Massilia.   [6] **Massiliam**: *Marseilles*.   [7] **Igilī**: a small island off the coast of Italy, not far from Rome.   [8] **Cosānō**: the territory belonging to Cosa, a town near the coast, northwest of Rome.   [9] **Massiliēnsīs**: **Massilia** + **ēnsis**, *–ian*.   [10] **adhortātus**: = **hortātus**.   [11] **suōrum**: refers to Pompey.   [12] **Caesarī**: dative of reference.

Observe the force of the prefix in **dī**mīserat, **prae**missōs, **ex**pellerent, **re**ficiēbant.

EXERCISE XLII

Grammar: A. 343, *c*; 452, 1; 484, *a*, *b*. B. 198, 3; 330; 267, 2, 3. G. 366, 2; 422; 509; 510. H. 439, 5; 615; 543; 544; 545.

Inflection: augeō; vīs; pār; is.

Order of words: in a phrase the emphatic word usually stands first.

Prescribed list:

agit	dēbēre	pār	iuvāre
initium	voluntātī	quoque	portibus
oriātur	utra	neutrum	

CÆSAR TRIES TO GAIN THE SUPPORT OF THE MASSILIANS, BUT THEY DECIDE TO REMAIN NEUTRAL

Ēvocat ad sē Caesar Massiliā quīndecim prīmōs.[1] Cum hīs agit nē initium īnferendī bellī ab Massiliēnsibus oriātur[2]: dēbēre eōs Ītaliae tōtīus auctōritātem sequī potius quam ūnīus hominis voluntātī obtemperāre. Reliqua quae ad eōrum sānandās mentīs[3] pertinēre

arbitrābātur[4] commemorat. Cuius ōrātiōnem lēgātī domum refe-
runt atque ex auctōritāte haec Caesarī renūntiant : intellegere sē
dīvīsum esse[5] populum Rōmānum in duās partīs. Neque suī
iūdicī[6] neque suārum esse vīrium discernere utra pars iūstiōrem
habeat causam. Prīncipēs vērō esse eārum partium Gnaeum
Pompēium et Gāium Caesarem, patrōnōs cīvitātis ; quōrum alter[7]
agrōs Volcārum[8] Arecomicōrum et Helviōrum pūblicē iīs conces-
serit, alter bellō victōs Sallyas[9] attribuerit vectīgāliaque auxerit.
Quārē paribus eōrum beneficiīs[10] parem sē quoque voluntātem
tribuere dēbēre et neutrum eōrum contrā alterum iuvāre aut urbe
aut portibus recipere. — DE BELLO CIVILI, I, 35

VOCABULARY

ēvocō, 1, *summon*	iūdicium, iūdi'cī, n., *judgment*
potius, *rather*	discernō, 3, crēvī, crētus, *decide*
obtemperō, 1, *heed*	attribuō, 3, uī, ūtus, *assign*
sānō, 1, *heal*	vectīgal, ālis, n., *revenue*
commemorō, 1, *mention*	

NOTES

[1] prīmōs : understand cīvīs.   [2] oriātur : states the purpose of agit.
[3] eōrum sānandās mentīs : *bringing them to their senses ;* mentīs is a synonym
of animus.   [4] arbitrābātur : synonym of putō.   [5] dīvīsum esse : depends
on intellegere.   [6] iūdicī : shows possession.   [7] alter : Pompey.   [8] Volcā-
rum, etc. : tribes of Gaul.   [9] Sallyas : a tribe dwelling not far from Massilia.
Accusative plural.   [10] paribus eōrum beneficiīs : gives a reason for parem
sē voluntātem tribuere dēbēre.

Observe the emphasis in the following phrases : īnferendī bellī, Ītaliae
tōtīus, ūnīus hominis, iūstiōrem causam.

EXERCISE XLIII

Grammar: A. 346, *a.* 3 ; 420, 1 ; 423, 1 ; 503. B. 201, 2 ; 227, 2, *a* ;
231 ; 339. 1, 2. G. 369 ; 410 ; 393 ; 427. H. 441 ; 489, 1 ; 487 ; 623 ;
626 ; 628.

Inflection: ūtor ; portus ; reliquus ; quī.

Order of words: a prepositional phrase usually limits a word following it.
Prescribed list:

summa	**ubīque**	**māteriā**	**obsidiōnem**
administrandī	**portum**	armandās	turrīs
permittitur	dēdūcunt	**reficiendās**	vīneās
onerāriās	**parum**	commeātūs	**caesa est**

DOMITIUS REACHES MASSILIA AND MAKES PREPA-
RATIONS FOR ITS DEFENSE

Haec dum inter eōs aguntur, Domitius[1] nāvibus Massiliam
pervenit atque ab iīs[2] receptus urbī praeficitur; summa eī bellī
administrandī permittitur. Eius imperiō classem quōqueversus
dīmittunt; onerāriās nāvīs, quās ubīque possunt,[3] dēprehendunt
atque in portum dēdūcunt, parum clāvīs[4] aut māteriā atque armā-
mentīs īnstrūctīs ad reliquās armandās[5] reficiendāsque ūtuntur; frū-
mentī quod[6] inventum est, in pūblicum cōnferunt; reliquās mercēs
commeātūsque ad obsidiōnem urbis, sī accidat, reservant. Quibus
iniūriīs[7] permōtus Caesar legiōnēs trīs Massiliam addūcit; turrīs
vīneāsque ad oppugnātiōnem urbis agere, nāvīs longās Arelāte[8]
numerō duodecim facere īnstituit. Quibus effectīs armātīsque
diēbus trīgintā, ā quā diē māteria caesa est, adductīsque Massiliam,
hīs Decimum Brūtum praeficit, Gāium Trebōnium lēgātum ad
oppugnātiōnem Massiliae relinquit. — DE BELLO CIVILI, I, 36

VOCABULARY

quōqueversus, *in every direction*
dēprehendō, 3, hendī, hēnsus, *catch*
    suddenly
clāvus, ī, m., *nail*

armāmentum, ī, n., *equipment*
inveniō, 4, vēnī, ventus, *come upon,*
    find
merx, mercis, f., *merchandise*

NOTES

[1] **Domitius:** an adherent of Pompey.   [2] **iīs:** refers to the Massilians.
[3] **possunt:** understand an infinitive from **dēprehendunt.**   [4] **clāvīs:** answers
the question "with what" about **īnstrūctīs,** which depends on **ūtuntur.**

[5] **armandās**, etc.: states the purpose of **ūtuntur.**   [6] **quod**: a relative limited by **frūmentī.**   [7] **iniūriīs**: refers to what precedes.   [8] **Arelāte**: *Arelas*, a town not far from Massilia. What fact does it state about **facere**?

Complete from the above passage the expressions of which each of the following phrases forms a part: **ab iīs, in portum, in pūblicum, ad obsidiōnem, ā quā diē, ad oppugnātiōnem.**

EXERCISE XLIV

Grammar : A. 346, *a*, 3; 406; 409; 418. B. 201, 2; 217, 1; 218; 226. G. 369; 398; 401; 397. H. 441; 471; 476; 480.

Inflection : terreō; mūnus; minor; ipse.

Order of words : the antecedent of a relative is usually in the preceding clause, and is often the word immediately before the relative.

Prescribed list :

hūc	impōnunt	īnsulam	centuriōnēs
classis	praemiīs	statiōnēs	mūneris
suprā	prōcēdunt	īnferior	ferreās

DOMITIUS AND BRUTUS, CÆSAR'S LIEUTENANT, PREPARE FOR A NAVAL BATTLE

Massiliēnsēs ūsī[1] Lūcī Domitī cōnsiliō nāvīs longās expediunt numerō septendecim, quārum erant ūndecim tēctae.[2] Multa hūc minōra nāvigia addunt, ut ipsā multitūdine nostra classis terreātur. Magnum numerum sagittāriōrum, magnum Albicōrum,[3] dē quibus suprā dēmōnstrātum est, impōnunt atque hōs praemiīs pollicitā-tiōnibusque incitant. Certās sibi dēposcit[4] nāvīs Domitius atque hās colōnīs[5] pāstōribusque, quōs sēcum addūxerat, complet. Sīc omnibus rēbus[6] īnstrūctā classe, magnā fīdūciā[7] ad nostrās nāvīs prōcēdunt, quibus praeerat Decimus Brūtus. Hae ad īnsulam, quae est contrā Massiliam, statiōnēs obtinēbant. Erat multō īnferior numerō nāvium Brūtus; sed ēlēctōs ex omnibus legiōnibus fortissimōs virōs, antesig-nānōs, centuriōnēs, Caesar eī classī attribuerat,[8] quī sibi id mūneris[9] dēpoposcerant. Hī manūs ferreās atque harpagōnēs parāverant.

DE BELLO CIVILI, I, 56, 57

VOCABULARY

tegō, 3, tēxī, tēctus, *cover*

nāvigium, nāvi′gī, n., *boat*

terreō, 2, uī, itus, *frighten*

pollicitātiō, ōnis, f., *promise*

colōnus, ī, m., *colonist*

pāstor, ōris, m., *shepherd*

ēligō, 3, lēgī, lēctus, *select*

antesignānus, ī, m., *veteran*

harpagō, ōnis, m., *grappling hook*

NOTES

[1] ūsī: what case depends on this word? [2] tēctae: *decked*. [3] Albi-cōrum: a tribe dwelling not far from Massilia. [4] dēposcit: synonym of poscit. [5] colōnīs: answers the question "with what" about complet. [6] rēbus: limits īnstrūctā. [7] fīdūciā: synonym of fidēs. It answers the question "how" about prōcēdunt. [8] attribuerat: nearly synonymous with praeficiō. [9] mūneris: limits id.

Think of English words from numerō, minōra, pāstōribus, complet, ēlēctōs, and observe how the English word retains the meaning of the Latin.

EXERCISE XLV

Grammar: A. 208, *d*; 418; 504. B. 256, 3; 226; 338, 1, *a*. G. 208, 2; 397; 428. H. 302, 6; 480; 626.

Inflection: impediō; diēs; uterque; noster.

Order of words: a dependent genitive, unless emphatic, usually follows the word which it limits.

Prescribed list:

portū	celeritāte	prōductā	aequō
utrimque	gubernātōrum	propius	bīnīs
cēdēbant	excipiēbant	perītīs	obiciēbant
modo	quoad	onerāriīs	compellunt
operam	licēbat		

THE NAVAL BATTLE BETWEEN THE MASSILIANS AND THE ROMANS

Ita cognitō hostium adventū suās nāvīs ex portū Rōmānī ēdū-cunt, cum Massiliēnsibus cōnflīgunt.[1] Pugnātum est utrimque fortissimē atque ācerrimē; neque multum Albicī[2] nostrīs virtūte[3]

cēdēbant, hominēs asperī et montānī[4] et exercitātī in armīs[5]; atque
hī modo dīgressī ā Massiliēnsibus recentem eōrum pollicitātiōnem
animīs continēbant,[6] pāstōrēsque Domitī spē lībertātis excitātī sub
oculīs dominī suam probāre operam studēbant. Ipsī Massiliēnsēs
et celeritāte nāvium et scientiā[7] gubernātōrum cōnfīsī nostrōs
ēlūdēbant impetūsque eōrum nōn excipiēbant et, quoad licēbat
lātiōre ūtī spatiō, prōductā longius aciē circumvenīre nostrōs aut
plūribus nāvibus adorīrī singulās,[8] sī possent, contendēbant; cum
propius[9] erat necessāriō ventum, ab scientiā gubernātōrum atque
artificiīs ad virtūtem montānōrum cōnfugiēbant. Nostrī cum[10] minus
exercitātīs rēmigibus minusque perītīs gubernātōribus ūtēbantur,
quī repente ex onerāriīs nāvibus erant prōductī, tum etiam tardi-
tāte[11] et gravitāte[12] nāvium impediēbantur. Itaque, dum locus
comminus pugnandī darētur, aequō animō singulās bīnīs nāvibus
obiciēbant, atque in hostium nāvīs trānscendēbant,[13] et, magnō
numerō Albicōrum et pāstōrum interfectō, partem nāvium dēpri-
munt, nōnnūllās cum hominibus capiunt, reliquās in portum com-
pellunt. Eō diē nāvēs Massiliēnsium, cum iīs quae sunt captae,
intereunt novem.[14] — DE BELLO CIVILI, I, 57, 58

VOCABULARY

asper, era, erum, *rough*

exercitō, 1, *train*

dīgredior, 3, gressus, *depart*

pollicitātiō, ōnis, f., *promise*

pāstor, ōris, m., *shepherd*

oculus, ī, m., *eye*

dominus, ī, m., *master*

ēlūdō, 3, lūsī, lūsus, *escape*

artificium, artifi'cī, n., *device, trick*

cōnfugiō, 3, fūgī, ——, *flee for refuge*

rēmex, igis, m., *rower*

repente, *suddenly*

comminus, *at close quarters*

dēprimō, 3, pressī, pressus, *sink*

intereō, 4, iī, itum, *perish*

NOTES

[1] **cōnflīgunt**: synonym of **pugnō**.   [2] **Albicī**: a tribe dwelling near Mas-
silia.   [3] **virtūte**: answers the question "in what respect" about **cēdēbant**.
[4] **montānī**: **mōns** + **ānus**, *belonging to.*   [5] **hominēs . . . armīs**: this tells
why the statement **neque . . . cēdēbant** is so.   [6] **continēbant**: *kept.*

[7] **scientiā:** **sciēns (sciō) + ia.**   [8] **singulās:** what word is understood? [9] **propius:** it was better for the Massilians to fight without the risk of being boarded.   [10] **cum:** *not only.*   [11] **tarditāte:** **tardus + tās.**   [12] **gravitāte:** think of the derivation.   [13] **trānscendēbant:** compare the verb **ascendō** and note the prefix **trāns.**   [14] **novem:** with **nāvēs.**

Think of English words from **cōnflīgunt, cēdēbant, excitātī, scientiā, cōnfīsī, circumvenīre, artificiīs,** and observe how the English word retains the meaning of the Latin.

EXERCISE XLVI

Grammar: A. 382, 1 ; 383 ; 384 ; 506. B. 191, 2 ; 192, 1 ; 338, 3. G. 356, N. 1 ; 359 ; 432, R. H. 433 ; 434, 2 ; 628.

Inflection: hortor ; porta ; certior ; hīc.

Order of words: the beginning of the sentence is a place of emphasis.

Prescribed list:

aggerem	aditus	subsidiō	cursum
vīneās	valle	**appulsīs**	magnopere
turrīs	**māteriam**	repentīnum	hortātur
portuī	exstruit	dēdūcit	rūrsus
portam	**classe**		

THE ROMANS PREPARE TO STORM MASSILIA

Dum haec[1] in Hispāniā geruntur, Gāius Trebōnius lēgātus, quī ad oppugnātiōnem Massiliae relictus erat, duābus ex[2] partibus aggerem, vīneās, turrīsque ad oppidum agere īnstituit. Ūna erat proxima portuī nāvālibusque, altera ad portam quā est aditus ex Galliā atque Hispāniā, ad id mare quod adiacet ad ōstium Rhodanī. Massilia enim ferē ex tribus oppidī partibus marī alluitur ; reliqua quārta est, quae aditum habeat ab terrā. Huius quoque spatī pars ea quae ad arcem pertinet, locī nātūrā et valle altissimā mūnīta, longam et difficilem[3] habet oppugnātiōnem. Ad ea perficienda opera Gāius Trebōnius magnam iūmentōrum atque hominum multitūdinem ex omnī prōvinciā vocat[4] ; vīmina māteriamque comportārī iubet. Quibus comparātīs rēbus aggerem in altitūdinem pedum octōgintā exstruit. Interim Lūcius Nāsidius, ab Gnaeō

Pompēiō cum classe nāvium sēdecim, in quibus paucae erant
aerātae, Lūciō Domitiō Massiliēnsibusque subsidiō missus, fretō[5]
Siciliae imprūdente atque inopīnante Cūriōne[6] pervehitur, appul-
sīsque Messānam[7] nāvibus, atque inde propter repentīnum terrōrem
prīncipum[8] ac senātūs fugā factā, nāvem ex nāvālibus eōrum dēdūcit.
Hāc adiūnctā[9] ad reliquās nāvīs cursum Massiliam versus[10] perficit,
praemissāque clam nāviculā[11] Domitium Massiliēnsīsque dē suō
adventū certiōrēs facit eōsque magnopere hortātur ut rūrsus cum
Brūtī[12] classe additīs suīs auxiliīs[13] cōnflīgant.

DE BELLO CIVILI, II, 1, 3

VOCABULARY

nāvālia, ium, n., *dockyard*

mare, is, n., *sea* (marine)

adiaceō, 2, uī, ———, *lie near* (adjacent)

ōstium, ōstī, n., *mouth*

alluō, 3, uī, ———, *wash*

arx, arcis, f., *citadel*

iūmentum, ī, n., *beast of burden*

vīmen, inis, n., *withe*

aerātus, a, um, *bronze-covered*

fretum, ī, n., *strait*

imprūdēns, imprūdentis, *off one's
    guard*

inopīnāns, inopīnantis, *not ex-
    pecting*

cōnflīgō, 3, flīxī, flīctus, *contend
    with* (conflict)

NOTES

[1] haec: the defeat of Cæsar's enemies.   [2] ex: *on.*   [3] difficilem:
compare with difficultās and with facilis.   [4] vocat: synonym of appellō.
[5] fretō: shows place.   [6] Cūriōne: the proprætor of Sicily.   [7] Messānam:
the city of Messina.   [8] prīncipum: with fugā.   [9] adiūnctā: ad + iungō.
[10] versus: *toward.* This preposition follows the word which it governs.
[11] nāviculā: nāvis + cula, *little.*   [12] Brūtī: the commander of Cæsar's
fleet.   [13] additīs . . . auxiliīs: states a reason for cōnflīgant.
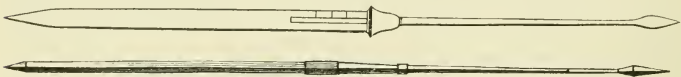
PILA

EXERCISE XLVII

Grammar: A. 349, *a*; 452, 1; 506; 563. B. 204, 1; 330; 338, 3; 295, 1. G. 374; 422; 432, R.; 546. H. 450; 451; 628; 565.

Inflection: contendō; tempus; superus (compare).

Order of words: an emphatic genitive depending on an adjective is usually placed before it.

Prescribed list:

refēcerat	dēfuit	**gubernātōrum**	iniectīs
remānserat	paulō	nactī	**classe**
prōiectī	paulātim	**ferreīs**	profūgit

BRUTUS, AT THE HEAD OF THE ROMAN FLEET, ENGAGES BATTLE WITH THE SHIPS OF THE MASSILIANS

Eōdem[1] Brūtus contendit auctō nāvium numerō. Nam ad eās quae factae erant Arelāte[2] per Caesarem captīvae Massiliēnsium accesserant sex. Hās superiōribus diēbus refēcerat atque omnibus rēbus īnstrūxerat. Itaque suōs cohortātus, quōs[3] integrōs superāvissent, ut victōs contemnerent, plēnus speī bonae atque animī adversus eōs proficīscitur. Facile erat ex castrīs Gāī Trebōnī atque omnibus superiōribus locīs prōspicere in urbem, ut[4] omnis iuventūs, quae in oppidō remānserat, omnēsque superiōris aetātis cum līberīs atque uxōribus pūblicīsque custōdiīs aut ex mūrō ad caelum manūs tenderent,[5] aut templa deōrum immortālium adīrent et ante simulācra prōiectī victōriam ab hīs exposcerent.[6] Commissō proeliō Massiliēnsibus[7] rēs nūlla ad virtūtem dēfuit; sed memorēs[8] eōrum praeceptōrum quae paulō ante ab suīs accēperant, hōc[9] animō dēcertābant ut nūllum aliud tempus ad cōnandum habitūrī vidērentur. Dīductīsque[10] nostrīs paulātim nāvibus et artificiō gubernātōrum et mōbilitātī nāvium locus dabātur, et sī quandō[11] nostrī facultātem nactī ferreīs manibus[12] iniectīs nāvem religāverant, undique suīs labōrantibus[13] succurrēbant. Ex Massiliēnsium classe quīnque sunt dēpressae, quattuor captae, ūna cum Nāsidiānīs profūgit.

<div align="right">DE BELLO CIVILI, II, 5, 6, 7</div>

VOCABULARY

integer, gra, grum, *fresh*

contemnō, 3, tempsī, temptus, *despise*

plēnus, a, um, *full* (plenty)

prōspiciō, 3. spexī, spectus, *look forth*

iuventūs, ūtis, f., *youth* (juvenile)

aetās, ātis, f., *age*

uxor, ōris, f., *wife*

custōdia, ae, f., *guard* (custody)

caelum, ī, n.. *sky*

deus, ī, m.. *god*

simulācrum, ī, n.. *image*

praeceptum, ī, n., *order*

artificium, artifi′cī, n., *skill*

mōbilitās, ātis, f., *moving*

religō, 1, *grapple*

succurrō, 3, curri, cursum, *rush to help*

NOTES

[1] eōdem: i.e. to Taurois, a fortress of the Massilians.   [2] Arelāte: *Arelas*, a town near Massilia.   [3] quōs: understand eōs as the antecedent, with which victōs agrees.   [4] ut: *how.*   [5] tenderent: think of the compound extenderent.   [6] exposcerent: synonym of poscō.   [7] Massiliēnsibus: depends on dēfuit.   [8] memorēs: adjective. Think of memoria.   [9] hōc: *such.*   [10] dīductīs: dī, *apart,* + dūcō.   [11] quandō: *at any time.*   [12] manibus: *prongs,* i.e. like hooked fingers.   [13] labōrantibus: translate by a clause.

Observe the force of the prefix in **ref**ēcerat, **rem**ānserat, **ad**irent, **prō**iectī, **dē**fuit, **ac**cēperant.

EXERCISE XLVIII

Grammar: A. 382. 1; 504; 558; 563. B. 191, 2; 338, 1; 295, 1, 3. G. 356; 428; 555, 1; 546. H. 433; 626; 595, 2; 565.

Inflection: ferō; opus; nūllus.

Order of words: a complementary infinitive usually precedes the verb on which it depends.

Prescribed list:

legiōnāriīs	**humilem**	moram	docent
administrābant	hinc	quōminus	**praedae**
crēbrīs	saxa	nūtum	generis
ēruptiōnibus	īnfima	**vēstīgiō**	**prōnūntiantur**
turrim			

THE ROMANS BUILD A TOWER AND UNDERMINE
A TURRET OF THE MASSILIANS, WHO PLEAD FOR
MERCY

Massiliēnsēs nihilō[1] sētius[2] ad dēfēnsiōnem[3] urbis reliqua appa-
rāre[4] coepērunt. Est animadversum ab legiōnāriīs quī dextram
partem operis administrābant, ex crēbrīs hostium ēruptiōnibus,
magnō sibi esse praesidiō posse sī ibi prō castellō ac receptāculō
turrim ex latere sub mūrō fēcissent. Quam prīmō ad repentīnōs
incursūs humilem parvamque fēcērunt. Hūc sē referēbant; hinc,
sī qua maior oppresserat vīs, prōpugnābant[5]; hinc ad repellendum
et prōsequendum hostem prōcurrēbant. Posteā vērō, ut[6] est rērum
omnium magister ūsus,[7] inventum est[8] magnō esse ūsuī posse sī
haec esset in altitūdinem turris ēlāta.[9] Id perfectum est. Ex eā
turrī mūsculum pedēs sexāgintā longum ad hostium turrim mū-
rumque facere īnstituērunt. Hoc opus omne tēctum vīneīs ad
turrim hostium admovent, ut aedificiō iungātur. Quō malō per-
territī subitō oppidānī[10] saxa in mūsculum dēvolvunt. Interim sub
mūsculō mīlitēs īnfima saxa turris hostium convellunt. Nōn datur
lībera mūrī dēfendendī facultās. Complūribus lapidibus turrī sub-
ductīs repentīnā ruīnā pars eius turris concidit, cum hostēs urbis
dīreptiōne perterritī inermēs ad lēgātōs atque exercitum supplicēs
manūs tendunt. Quā novā rē oblātā[11] omnis administrātiō[12] bellī
cōnsistit mīlitēsque āversī ā proeliō ad studium audiendī et cog-
nōscendī feruntur. Ubi hostēs ad lēgātōs exercitumque pervēnērunt,
ūniversī sē ad pedēs prōiciunt; ōrant ut adventus Caesaris exspec-
tētur. Captam[13] suam urbem vidēre[14]; opera perfecta, turrim
subrutam; itaque ab dēfēnsiōne dēsistere. Nūllam exorīrī[15] moram
posse quōminus,[16] cum vēnisset, sī imperāta[17] nōn facerent ad
nūtum, ē vēstīgiō dīriperentur.[18] Docent, sī omnīnō turris conci-
disset, nōn posse mīlitēs continērī quīn spē praedae in urbem
irrumperent urbemque dēlērent. Haec atque eiusdem generis com-
plūra, ut ab hominibus doctīs,[19] magnā cum misericordiā flētūque[20]
prōnūntiantur. — DE BELLO CIVILI, II, 8, 10, 12

VOCABULARY

receptāculum, ī, n., *place of refuge*

later, eris, m., *brick*

incursus, ūs, m., *onset*

prōcurrō, 3, currī, cursum, *run forth*

magister, trī, m., *master, teacher*

mūsculus, ī, m., *covered passageway*

tegō, 3, tēxī, tēctus, *protect*

vīnea, ae, f., *shed*

dēvolvō, 3, volvī, volūtus, *roll down*

convellō, 3, vellī, vulsus, *loosen*

concidō, 3, cidī, ———, *collapse*

dīreptiō, ōnis, f., *pillage*

tendō, 3, tetendī, tentus, *extend*

subruō, 3, ruī, rutus, *undermine*

urbs, urbis, f., *city*

irrumpō, 3, rūpī, ruptus, *burst into*

dēleō, 2, lēvī, lētus, *destroy*

misericordia, ae, f., *wretchedness*

NOTES

[1] nihilō: = nihil. [2] sētius: = minus. [3] dēfēnsiōnem: dēfendō + tiō. [4] apparāre: ad + parō. [5] prōpugnābant: observe the prefix. [6] ut: *as*. [7] ūsus: *experience*. [8] inventum est: in, *upon*, + veniō. English derivative? [9] ēlāta esset: ex + ferō. [10] oppidānī: oppidum + ānus, *belonging to*. [11] oblātā: from offerō. English derivative? [12] administrātiō: administrō + tiō. [13] captam: indirect discourse depending on vidēre. [14] vidēre: indirect discourse depending on the idea of saying implied in ōrant. [15] exorīrī: synonym of orior. [16] quōminus: *so that ... not*. [17] imperāta: neuter participle of imperō, used as a noun. [18] dīriperentur: the same root is found in the noun dīreptiō. [19] doctīs: *learned*, ironical with ut. [20] flētū: a verbal noun from fleō.

EXERCISE XLIX

Grammar: A. 410; 531; 546; 558. B. 218, 1; 282, 1; 288, 1, B; 295, 3. G. 407; 545, 1, 3; 585; 555, 1. H. 477; 568; 600, II, 1; 595, 2.

Inflection: possum; turris; quīdam; aegrē (compare).

Order of words: the adverb is usually placed immediately before the word which it modifies.

Prescribed list:

dēdūcunt	at	ventō	nactī
oppugnātiōne	occāsiōnem	sagittīs	aggerem
genere	aliquot	fugientīs	ēruptiōne
remittunt	portīs	tempestātis	reficere

THE MASSILIANS DISREGARD THE TRUCE AND SET FIRE TO THE SIEGEWORKS OF THE ROMANS

Quibus rēbus[1] commōtī lēgātī mīlitēs ex opere dēdūcunt, oppugnātiōne dēsistunt; operibus custōdiās relinquunt. Indūtiārum quōdam genere misericordiā[2] factō adventus Caesaris exspectātur. Nūllum ex mūrō, nūllum ā nostrīs mittitur tēlum; ut[3] rē cōnfectā, omnēs cūram et dīligentiam remittunt. Caesar enim per litterās Trebōniō magnō opere[4] mandāverat nē per vim oppidum expugnārī paterētur, nē gravius permōtī mīlitēs et dēfectiōnis odiō et contemptiōne suī[5] et diūtinō[6] labōre omnīs pūberēs interficerent; quod[7] sē factūrōs minābantur, aegrēque tunc sunt retentī quīn oppidum irrumperent, graviterque eam rem tulērunt, quod stetisse per Trebōnium quōminus oppidō potīrentur vidēbātur. At hostēs sine fidē tempus atque occāsiōnem fraudis ac dolī quaerunt, interiectīsque[8] aliquot diēbus, subitō merīdiānō tempore, cum alius discessisset, alius ex diūtinō labōre in ipsīs operibus quiētī sē dedisset, arma vērō omnia reposita[9] contēctaque essent, portīs forās ērumpunt,[10] secundō magnōque ventō ignem operibus īnferunt. Nostrī repentīnā fortūnā permōtī arma quae possunt arripiunt; aliī ex castrīs sēsē incitant. Fit in hostīs impetus eōrum, sed dē mūrō sagittīs tormentīsque fugientīs persequī[11] prohibentur. Ita multōrum mēnsium labor hostium perfidiā et vī tempestātis pūnctō temporis interiit. Temptāvērunt hoc idem Massiliēnsēs posterō diē. Eandem nactī tempestātem maiōre cum fīdūciā[12] ad alteram turrim aggeremque ēruptiōne pugnāvērunt multumque ignem intulērunt. Sed ut superiōris temporis contentiōnem[13] nostrī omnem remīserant,[14] ita proximī diēī cāsū admonitī[15] omnia ad dēfēnsiōnem parāverant. Itaque multīs interfectīs reliquōs īnfectā[16] rē in oppidum reppulērunt. Trebōnius autem ea quae sunt āmissa multō maiōre mīlitum studiō administrāre et reficere īnstituit. Nam ubi tantōs suōs labōrēs cecidisse vīdērunt, aggerem novī generis aequā ferē altitūdine fēcerunt. Celeriter rēs administrātur. Portae ēruptiōnis causā in mūrō relinquuntur. — DE BELLO CIVILI, II, 13, 14, 15

VOCABULARY

custōdia, ae, f., *guard*

indūtiae, ārum, f., *truce*

misericordia, ae, f., *pity*

cūra, ae, f., *care*

dēfectiō, ōnis, f., *revolt*

odium, odī, n., *strong dislike*

pūberēs, um, m., *adults*

minor, 1, *threaten*

irrumpō, 3, rūpī, ruptus, *break into*

stō, 1, stetī, statum, *stand*, (with per)
    stand to one's account

dolus, ī, m., *trickery*

merīdiānus, a, um, *of midday*

contegō, 3, tēxī, tēctus, *cover*

forās, *forth*

arripiō, 3, ripuī, reptus, *seize*

tormentum, ī, n., *hurling machine*

perfidia, ae, f., *treachery*

pūnctum, ī, n., *moment*

intereō, 4, iī, itum, *perish*

NOTES

[1] **quibus rēbus:** the fall of a great tower which the Massilians had erected. [2] **misericordiā:** states the cause of **factō**. [3] **ut:** *as.* [4] **magnō opere:** has the force of an adverb. [5] **suī:** *shown to them.* To whom does **suī** refer? [6] **diūtinō:** diū + tinus, a time suffix. [7] **quod:** refers to the preceding clause. [8] **interiectīs:** observe the composition. [9] **reposita:** observe the composition. [10] **ērumpunt:** compare with **irrumpō**. [11] **persequī:** observe the composition. [12] **fīdūciā:** synonym of **fidēs**. [13] **contentiōnem:** English derivative? [14] **remīserant:** *had given up.* [15] **admonitī:** composition? [16] **īnfectā:** composition?

Observe the position of the adverbs in the passage, and determine the reason for the exceptions to the rule stated above.

EXERCISE L

Grammar: A. 382, 1; 414; 489; 496. B. 191, 1; 223; 336, 1; 337, 2, *a, f.* G. 356; 403; 282; 665; 666. H. 433; 479, 3; 460; 638, 1.

Inflection: trādō; auxilium; gravis; ipse.

Order of words: adjectives of quantity usually precede the nouns which they modify.

Prescribed list:

dēfessī	ēruptiōnibus	familiāribus	**portum**
bis	vīctūs	cōnscenderat	ancorīs
crēbrīs	dēdere	nactus	cōnspectū

THE MASSILIANS, BESET BY MISFORTUNE, SURRENDER

Massiliēnsēs omnibus dēfessī malīs, reī frūmentāriae ad summam inopiam adductī, bis nāvālī[1] proeliō superātī, crēbrīs ēruptiōnibus fūsī, gravī etiam pestilentiā[2] cōnflīctātī ex diūtinā[3] conclūsiōne et mūtātiōne vīctūs (pānicō enim vetere atque hordeō corruptō omnēs alēbantur, quod ad huius modī cāsūs[4] antīquitus[5] parātum in pūblicum[6] contulerant), dēiectā turrī, labefactā magnā parte mūrī, auxiliīs prōvinciārum et exercituum dēspērātīs,[7] quōs in Caesaris potestātem vēnisse cognōverant, sēsē dēdere sine fraude cōnstituunt. Sed paucīs ante[8] diēbus Lūcius Domitius cognitā Massiliēnsium voluntāte, nāvibus tribus comparātīs, ex quibus duās familiāribus suīs attribuerat, ūnam ipse cōnscenderat, nactus turbidam tempestātem profectus est. Hunc cōnspicātae nāvēs, quae missū[9] Brūtī cōnsuētūdine cotidiānā ad[10] portum excubābant, sublātīs ancorīs, sequī coepērunt. Ex hīs ūnum ipsīus nāvigium[11] contendit et fugere persevērāvit[12] auxiliōque tempestātis ex cōnspectū abiit,[13] duo perterrita[14] concursū nostrārum nāvium sēsē in portum recēpērunt. Massiliēnsēs arma tormentaque ex oppidō, ut est imperātum, prōferunt, nāvīs ex portū nāvālibusque ēdūcunt, pecūniam ex pūblicō trādunt. Quibus rēbus cōnfectīs, Caesar, magis eōs prō nōmine et vetustāte[15] quam prō meritīs in sē cīvitātis cōnservāns, duās ibi legiōnēs praesidiō[16] relīquit. — DE BELLO CIVILI, II, 22

VOCABULARY

malum, ī, n., *evil*
fundō, 3, fūdī, fūsus, *rout*
cōnflīctātus, a, um, *tormented*
conclūsiō, ōnis, f., *blockade*
mūtātiō, ōnis, f., *change*
pānicum, ī, n., *millet*
hordeum, ī, n., *barley*
corruptus, a, um, *damaged*
alō, 3, uī, tus, *feed*
labefactus, a, um, *shaken*

fraus, fraudis, f., *deception*
attribuō, 3, uī, ūtus, *assign*
turbidus, a, um, *boisterous*
tempestās, ātis, f., *weather*
excubō, 1, *keep watch*
tormentum, ī, n., *hurling machine*
nāvālia, ium, n., *dockyard*
pecūnia, ae, f., *money*
cōnservō, 1, *save*

NOTES

[1] nāvālī: nāvis + ālis, *belonging to*.   [2] pestilentiā: English derivative?
[3] diūtina: diū + tinus, a time suffix.   [4] cāsūs: *chances*.   [5] antīquitus:
adverb from antīquus, synonym of vetus.   [6] in pūblicum: *for public use*.
[7] dēspērātīs: dē + spērō. English derivative?   [8] ante: adverb.   [9] missū:
verbal noun from mittō.   [10] ad: *near*.   [11] nāvigium: synonym of nāvis.
[12] persevērāvit: English derivative?   [13] abiit: composition?   [14] perter-
rita: nāvigia is understood.   [15] vetustāte: vetus + tās.   [16] praesidiō:
states what the legiōnēs were for.

Determine which of the participles in the passage denote *time* and
which denote *cause*.

EXERCISE LI

Grammar: A. 504, *b* ; 540 ; 549. B. 338, 1, *c* ; 286, 1, 2. G. 428, 2 ;
540 ; 586. H. 475, 2 ; 588, 1 ; 598.

Inflection: volō ; equitātus ; ipse.

Order of words: an adjective usually is placed immediately before or
after the word which it modifies, unless a limiting word or phrase
intervenes.

GALBA IS STATIONED IN THE ALPS TO KEEP THE ROADS OPEN

Cum in Ītaliam proficīscerētur Caesar, Servium Galbam cum
legiōne duodecimā et parte equitātūs in Nantuātīs,[1] Veragrōs,
Sedūnōsque mīsit, quī ā fīnibus Allobrogum et lacū Lemannō et
flūmine Rhodanō ad summās Alpīs pertinent. Causa mittendī fuit
quod[2] iter[3] per Alpīs, quō magnō cum perīculō magnīsque cum
portōriīs mercātōrēs īre cōnsuērant, patefierī volēbat. Huic[4] per-
mīsit, sī opus esse arbitrārētur, utī in hīs locīs legiōnem hiemandī
causā collocāret. Galba secundīs **aliquot**[5] proeliīs factīs castellīsque
complūribus eōrum expugnātīs, missīs ad eum undique lēgātīs
obsidibusque datīs et pāce factā, cōnstituit cohortīs duās in Nantuā-
tibus collocāre et[6] ipse cum reliquīs eius legiōnis cohortibus in vīcō
Veragrōrum, quī appellātur Octodūrus, hiemāre ; quī vīcus positus

in **valle,** nōn magnā adiectā plānitiē, altissimīs montibus undique continētur. Cum hīc in duās partīs flūmine dīviderētur,[7] alteram partem eius vīcī Gallīs concessit, alteram vacuam[8] ab hīs relictam cohortibus attribuit. Eum locum vāllō fossāque mūnīvit.

DE BELLO GALLICO, III, 1

VOCABULARY

duodecimus, a, um, *twelfth*

quō, *whither*

portōria, ōrum, n., *customs duties*

patefaciō, 3, fēcī, factus, *throw open*

arbitror, 1, *think*

adiciō, 3, iēcī, iectus, *lie near to*

plānitiēs, ēī, f., *plain*

vacuus, a, um, *empty* (vacuum)

attribuō, 3, uī, ūtus, *assign*

NOTES

[1] **Nantuātīs,** etc.: for the location of these tribes, consult the map. [2] **quod,** etc.: this clause explains **causa.** [3] **iter:** the voice of **patefierī** shows that **iter** must be subject. [4] **huic:** refers to Galba. [5] **aliquot:** indeclinable. [6] **collocāre et:** what word does **et** connect with **collocāre**? [7] **cum . . . dīviderētur:** states the reason for **concessit** and **attribuit.** [8] **vacuam:** predicate adjective with **relictam.**

Observe the position of the adjectives in the passage with reference to the words which they modify.

EXERCISE LII

Grammar: A. 569, 2; 579; 580. B. 297, 2; 313; 314, 1. G. 553, 3; 648; 650. H. 571, 1; 641; 642; 643.

Inflection: eō; diēs; omnis.

Order of words: a preposition regularly precedes the word which it governs.

THE MOUNTAIN TRIBES RENEW THE WAR AND OVERPOWER THE ROMAN SOLDIERS

Cum diēs hībernōrum complūrēs trānsīssent frūmentumque[1] eō comportārī iussisset, subitō per explōrātōrēs certior factus est ex eā parte vīcī quam Gallīs concesserat omnīs noctū[2] discessisse,

montīsque³ quī impendērent ā maximā multitūdine Sedūnōrum et
Veragrōrum tenērī.   Id **aliquot** dē causīs acciderat, ut subitō Gallī
bellī **renovandī** legiōnisque opprimendae cōnsilium caperent: prī-
mum, quod⁴ legiōnem, neque eam⁵ plēnissimam dētrāctīs cohorti-
bus duābus et complūribus singillātim quī commeātūs petendī
causā missī erant absentibus, propter paucitātem⁶ dēspiciēbant;
tum etiam, quod propter inīquitātem⁷ locī, cum ipsī ex montibus
in **vallem** dēcurrerent et tēla conicerent, nē prīmum quidem impe-
tum suum posse sustinērī⁸ exīstimābant. Accēdēbat quod suōs ab
sē līberōs abstrāctōs obsidum nōmine⁹ dolēbant,¹⁰ et Rōmānōs nōn
sōlum itinerum causā sed etiam perpetuae possessiōnis¹¹ culmina
Alpium occupāre cōnārī et ea loca fīnitimae prōvinciae¹² adiungere
sibi persuāsum habēbant.¹³ — DE BELLO GALLICO, III, 2

VOCABULARY

eō, *thither*

impendeō, 2, ——, ——, *overhang*

plēnus, a, um, *full*

singillātim, *one at a time*

abstrahō, 3, trāxī, trāctus, *draw
    away from*

culmen, inis, n., *summit*

NOTES

¹ frūmentum: the voice of comportārī shows that this cannot be its object.
² noctū: = nocte.   ³ montīs: for the syntax, observe the voice of tenērī.
⁴ quod, etc.: a clause which explains causīs. How many other reasons
does Cæsar give?   ⁵ eam: refers to legiōnem.   ⁶ paucitātem: paucī + tās.
⁷ inīquitātem: in + aequus + tās.   ⁸ sustinērī: complementary infinitive.
⁹ nōmine: *under the name.*   ¹⁰ dolēbant: an indirect statement depends
on it.   ¹¹ possessiōnis: understand causā.   ¹² prōvinciae: for the case,
consider adiungere.   ¹³ sibi persuāsum habēbant: *were persuaded.*

Think of English words from factus, concesserat, impendērent, acciderat,
renovandī, dēspiciēbant, culmina, adiungere, and observe how the English
word retains the meaning of the Latin.

EXERCISE LIII

Grammar: A. 346, *a*, 3; 409, *a*; 420, 1, 2; 454. B. 201, 2; 218, 8; 227, 2, *a*, *d*; 330. G. 369; 405; 410; 422, 4. H. 442; 477, II; 489, 1; 615, 1.

Inflection: possum; salūs; celeriter (compare).

Order of words: a dependent genitive, unless emphatic, normally follows the noun which it limits.

A COUNCIL IS CALLED TO CONSIDER WAYS OF MEETING THE IMPENDING DANGER

Hīs nūntiīs acceptīs Galba, cum neque opus hībernōrum mūnītiōnēsque plēnē essent perfectae neque dē frūmentō reliquōque commeātū satis esset prōvīsum,[1] quod[2] dēditiōne factā obsidibusque acceptīs nihil dē bellō timendum[3] exīstimāverat, cōnsiliō celeriter convocātō sententiās exquīrere[4] coepit. Quō in cōnsiliō, cum tantum repentīnī perīculī praeter opīniōnem accidisset, ac iam omnia ferē superiōra loca multitūdine armātōrum complēta[5] cōnspicerentur, neque subsidiō venīrī[6] neque commeātūs supportārī[7] interclūsīs itineribus possent, prope iam dēspērātā[8] salūte nōn nūllae eius modī[9] sententiae dīcēbantur, ut impedīmentīs relictīs, ēruptiōne factā, īsdem itineribus quibus eō pervēnissent ad salūtem contenderent.[10] Maiōrī tamen partī[11] placuit[12] hōc reservātō ad extrēmum cāsum cōnsiliō interim reī ēventum experīrī et castra dēfendere. — DE BELLO GALLICO, III, 3

VOCABULARY

plēnē, *fully*.

eō, *thither*

placeō, 2, uī, itum, *please*

NOTES

[1] **esset prōvīsum:** impersonal.   [2] **quod:** conjunction.   [3] **timendum:** what is understood? Consider the finite verb of the clause.   [4] **exquīrere:** ex + quaerō.   [5] **complēta:** predicate adjective.   [6] **venīrī:** understand

posset, used impersonally.   [7] **supportārī:** sub, *up to*, + portō.   [8] **dēspē-rātā:** composition ?   [9] **modī:** descriptive genitive.   [10] **contenderent:** states the purpose of **sententiae dīcēbantur.**   [11] **partī:** for the case, consider the verb.   [12] **placuit:** impersonal.

Find the phrases in the passage which contain a genitive, observe in each case the position of the genitive, and determine the reason for the position.

EXERCISE LIV

Grammar: A. 400; 401; 418; 463. B. 214, 1, *b*; 226; 335. G. 405; 397; 647. H. 462; 480; 610.

Inflection: dō; brevis; suī.

Order of words: an adverb normally is placed before the word which it limits.

OUR MEN, ATTACKED BY THE ENEMY, ARE AT A DISADVANTAGE BECAUSE OF THEIR SMALL NUMBERS

Brevī spatiō interiectō, vix ut iīs rēbus[1] quās cōnstituissent collocandīs atque administrandīs tempus darētur, hostēs ex omnibus partibus signō datō dēcurrere,[2] lapidēs gaesaque in vāllum conicere. Nostrī prīmō integrīs vīribus fortiter prōpugnāre neque ūllum **frūstrā** tēlum ex locō superiōre mittere, et quaecumque pars castrōrum nūdāta dēfēnsōribus[3] premī vidēbātur, eō occurrere et auxilium ferre; sed hōc[4] superārī, quod[5] diūturnitāte pugnae hostēs dēfessī proeliō excēdēbant, aliī integrīs vīribus succēdēbant, — quārum rērum ā nostrīs propter paucitātem[6] fierī nihil poterat, ac nōn modo dēfessō[7] ex pugnā excēdendī sed nē **sauciō** quidem eius locī ubi cōnstiterat relinquendī ac suī[8] recipiendī facultās dabātur.

DE BELLO·GALLICO, III, 4

VOCABULARY

intericiō, 3, iēcī, iectus, *intervene*

gaesum, ī, n., *javelin*

integer, gra, grum, *fresh*

dēfēnsor, ōris, m., *defender*

diūturnitās, ātis, f., *long duration*

NOTES

[1] **rēbus:** for the case, consider the verb of the clause.   [2] **dēcurrere:** historical infinitive, used in lively narrative instead of the indicative. The passage contains several other examples of this use of the infinitive. [3] **dēfēnsōribus:** with **nūdāta.**   [4] **hōc:** ablative of respect.   [5] **quod:** conjunction.   [6] **paucitātem:** paucī + tās.   [7] **dēfessō:** understand **hominī.** Take with **dabātur.**   [8] **suī:** refers to **sauciō.**

Think of English words from **brevī, tempus, omnibus, integrīs, frūstrā, superiōre, succēdēbant, poterat,** and observe how the Latin word helps to make plain the meaning of the English derivative.

EXERCISE LV

Grammar: A. 282; 345; 563. B. 169, 1; 203, 1; 295, 1. G. 320; 365; 546. H. 393; 440, 3; 565.

Inflection: faciō; vīs; certior.

Order of words: a common arrangement of the parts of the predicate, unless modified by the general rule of emphasis, is: indirect object, direct object, adverb, verb.

THE ROMANS DECIDE THAT IN A SALLY LIES THEIR ONLY HOPE OF RELIEF

Cum iam amplius hōrīs[1] sex continenter pugnārētur[2] ac nōn sōlum vīrēs sed etiam tēla nostrōs dēficerent, atque hostēs ācrius īnstārent languidiōribusque[3] nostrīs vāllum scindere et fossās complēre coepissent, rēsque esset iam ad extrēmum perducta[4] cāsum, Pūblius Sextius Baculus, prīmī pīlī centuriō, quem Nervicō proeliō complūribus cōnfectum[5] vulneribus dīximus, et item Gāius Volusēnus, tribūnus mīlitum, vir et cōnsilī magnī et virtūtis, ad Galbam accurrunt atque ūnam esse spem salūtis docent, sī ēruptiōne factā extrēmum auxilium experīrentur. Itaque convocātīs centuriōnibus celeriter mīlitēs certiōrēs facit[6] paulisper intermitterent proelium ac tantummodo tēla missa exciperent sēque ex labōre **reficerent,** post[7] datō signō ex castrīs ērumperent atque omnem spem salūtis in virtūte pōnerent. — DE BELLO GALLICO, III, 5

VOCABULARY

languidus, a, um, *weary*   accurrō, 3, currī, cursum, *run to*

scindō, 3, scidī, scissus,   ērumpō, 3, rūpī, ruptus, *burst*

    split   *forth* (eruption)

NOTES

[1] **hōrīs**: ablative with **amplius**.   [2] **pugnārētur**, etc.: these verbs are in the subjunctive because the clauses describe the circumstances that go to make up the critical condition in which Galba finds himself.   [3] **languidiō-ribus**: a part of the ablative absolute.   [4] **perducta**: with **esset**.   [5] **cōn-fectum**: what is understood?   [6] **certiōrēs facit**: equivalent to a verb of commanding, the commands being expressed in the following subjunctives.
[7] **post**: adverb.

Select words in the passage which seem emphatic, and determine the reason for considering them so.

EXERCISE LVI

Grammar: A. 370 ; 419 ; 423, 1 : 540. B. 187, III ; 227 ; 230 ; 286, 1. G. 347 ; 409 ; 393 ; 540. H. 429 ; 489 ; 486 ; 588, I.

Inflection: fīō ; alius.

Order of words : a demonstrative pronoun usually precedes the word which it modifies.

THE ROMANS BY A SALLY ROUT THE ENEMY AND RETURN TO THE PROVINCE

Quod[1] iussī sunt faciunt, ac subitō omnibus portīs ēruptiōne factā neque cognōscendī quid fieret neque suī[2] colligendī hostibus facultātem relinquunt. Ita commūtātā fortūnā eōs quī in spem potiundōrum castrōrum vēnerant undique circumventōs[3] interficiunt, et ex hominum mīlibus amplius trīgintā, quem numerum[4] barbarōrum ad castra vēnisse cōnstābat, plūs tertiā parte interfectā reliquōs perterritōs in fugam coniciunt ac nē in locīs quidem superiōribus cōnsistere patiuntur. Sīc omnibus hostium cōpiīs fūsīs armīsque[5] exūtīs sē intrā mūnītiōnēs suās recipiunt. Quō proeliō factō, quod[6] saepius fortūnam temptāre Galba nōlēbat, atque aliō[7]

sē in hīberna cōnsiliō vēnisse meminerat, aliīs occurrisse rēbus
vīderat, maximē frūmentī commeātūsque inopiā[8] permōtus posterō
diē omnibus eius vīcī[9] aedificiīs incēnsīs in prōvinciam revertī
contendit, ac nūllō hoste prohibente aut iter dēmorante[10] inco-
lumem legiōnem in Nantuātīs, inde in Allobrogēs perdūxit ibique
hiemāvit. — DE BELLO GALLICO, III, 6

VOCABULARY

colligō, 3, lēgī, lēctus, *gather together*   fundō, 3, fūdī, fūsus, *rout*
  (collection)   exuō, 3, uī, ūtus, *strip*
commūtō, 1, *change* (commute)   meminī, isse (defective), *remember*

NOTES

[1] quod: pronoun; understand facere.   [2] suī: refers to hostibus.
[3] circumventōs: translate as if it were a finite verb with the same form as
interficiunt.   [4] numerum: subject of vēnisse.   [5] armīs: ablative of sep-
aration.   [6] quod: conjunction.   [7] aliō: note the emphasis.   [8] inopiā:
states the cause of permōtus.   [9] vīcī: a genitive often stands between an
adjective and its noun.   [10] dēmorante: synonym of moror.

EXERCISE LVII

Grammar: A. 345, *a*; 419, *a*; 423, 1. 2. B. 203, 1; 227, 1; 230;
181, 1. G. 365; 409; 393; 336. H. 440, 3; 489; 486; 417.

Inflection: coepī; opus; exterus (compare).

Order of words: the limiting word or phrase, unless unemphatic, pre-
cedes the word which it limits.

The Veneti, a tribe occupying the seacoast northwest of the River Loire,
form a union to resist the Romans. They have a strong navy and live in a
section hard to invade. Cæsar understands the seriousness of the danger
and orders a large fleet of war vessels to be built and equipped.

THE LOCATION OF THE TOWNS OF THE VENETI AND
THEIR MEANS OF DEFENSE

Erant eius modī ferē sitūs oppidōrum ut posita[1] in extrēmīs
lingulīs prōmunturiīsque[2] neque pedibus aditum habērent cum ex
altō[3] sē **acstus** incitāvisset, quod[4] accidit semper hōrārum duodecim

spatiō, neque nāvibus, quod rūrsus minuente aestū nāvēs in vadīs afflīctārentur.[5] Ita utrāque rē oppidōrum oppugnātiō impediēbātur. Ac sī quandō magnitūdine operis forte superātī, extrūsō **marī** aggere ac **mōlibus** atque hīs oppidī moenibus adaequātīs, dēspērāre[6] fortūnīs suīs coeperant, magnō numerō nāvium **appulsō**, cuius reī summam facultātem habēbant, sua dēportābant[7] omnia sēque in proxima oppida recipiēbant; ibi sē rūrsus īsdem opportūnitātibus locī dēfendēbant. Haec eō[8] facilius magnam partem aestātis faciēbant, quod nostrae nāvēs **tempestātibus** dētinēbantur,[9] summaque erat vāstō atque apertō marī, magnīs aestibus, **rārīs** ac prope nūllīs **portibus**, difficultās nāvigandī. — DE BELLO GALLICO, III, 12

VOCABULARY

situs, ūs, m., *situation*

lingula, ae, f., *little tongue* (of land)

semper, *always*

quandō, *at any time*

extrūdō, 3, trūsī, trūsus, *shut out*

vāstus, a, um, *vast*

NOTES

[1] posita: agrees with a pronoun referring to **oppidōrum** and subject of **habē-rent**. [2] prōmunturiīs: English derivative? [3] altō: *the deep*. [4] quod: refers to the fact stated in the preceding clause. [5] afflīctārentur: English derivative? [6] dēspērāre: composition? [7] dēportābant: composition? [8] eō: *for this reason*. [9] dētinēbantur: composition?

Observe the large number of examples of the ablative absolute in the passage and determine the best way to translate each one.
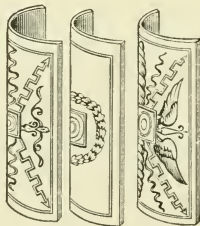
SHIELDS

EXERCISE LVIII

Grammar: A. 414; 415; 506. B. 223; 224; 338, 3. G. 403; 400; 432, R. H. 479; 473, 2; 628.

Inflection: fīō; flūctus; plānior.

Order of words: a genitive, unless emphatic, follows the noun which it limits.

THE SHIPS OF THE VENETI AND THEIR EQUIPMENT

Namque ipsōrum nāvēs ad hunc modum[1] factae armātaeque erant: carīnae aliquantō **plāniōrēs** quam nostrārum nāvium,[2] quō[3] facilius vada ac dēcessum **aestūs** excipere possent; prōrae[4] admodum ērēctae atque item **puppēs,** ad magnitūdinem **flūctuum tempestātumque** accommodātae; nāvēs tōtae factae ex **rōbore** ad quamvis vim et contumēliam perferendam; trānstra ex pedālibus[5] in altitūdinem trabibus, cōnfīxa clāvīs **ferreīs** digitī pollicis[6] crassitūdine; **ancorae** prō **fūnibus** ferreīs catēnīs revinctae[7]; pellēs prō **vēlīs** alūtaeque tenuiter cōnfectae,[8] sīve propter inopiam līnī atque eius ūsūs īnscientiam[9] sīve eō, quod est magis vērī simile, quod tantās tempestātēs Ōceanī tantōsque impetūs **ventōrum** sustinērī ac tanta onera nāvium **regī** vēlīs nōn satis commodē posse arbitrābantur.[10] — DE BELLO GALLICO, III, 13

VOCABULARY

carīna, ae, f., *keel*
aliquantus, a, um, *some, somewhat*
dēcessus, ūs, m., *ebb*
prōra, ae, f., *prow*
admodum, *very much*
ērēctus, a, um, *raised*
trānstrum, ī, n., *thwart*

cōnfīxus, a, um, *fastened together*
clāvus, ī, m., *nail*
crassitūdō, inis, f., *thickness*
alūta, ae, f., *leather*
tenuiter, *thinly*
sīve ... sīve, *whether ... or*
līnum, ī, n., *linen*

NOTES

[1] modum: *fashion.* [2] nāvium: understand carīnae. [3] quō: introduces a clause of purpose containing a comparative. [4] prōrae: understand erant. [5] pedālibus: pēs + ālis, *belonging to, of a.* [6] digitī pollicis:

thumb.   [7] revinctae: re + vinciō.   [8] cōnfectae: *tanned.*   [9] īnscientiam:
composition?   [10] arbitrābantur: synonym of exīstimō.

Think of English words from **factae, plāniōrēs, excipere, flūctuum, tōtae,
cōnfectae, onera,** and observe how the Latin word helps to make plain the
meaning of the English derivative.

EXERCISE LIX

Grammar: A. 374, *a*; 537, 1; 569, 2. B. 189, 1; 284, 1; 297, 2.
G. 355; 552; 553, 4. H. 431; 570; 571, 1.

Inflection: ferō; vīs; facile (compare).

Order of words: the words of a phrase, clause, or sentence are arranged
from the beginning in the order of their importance in the mind of the
writer.

WHY THE ROMAN SHIPS ARE INFERIOR TO THOSE OF THE VENETI

Cum hīs[1] nāvibus nostrae **classī**[2] eius modī congressus[3] erat ut
ūnā celeritāte et pulsū[4] **rēmōrum** praestāret, reliqua prō locī nātūrā,
prō vī **tempestātum,** illīs[5] essent **aptiōra** et accommodātiōra. Neque
enim iīs[6] nostrae **rōstrō nocēre** poterant, tanta in iīs erat fīrmitūdō,[7]
neque propter altitūdinem facile tēlum adigēbātur,[8] et eādem dē
causā minus commodē cōpulīs continēbantur. Accēdēbat[9] ut, cum
saevīre ventus coepisset et sē **ventō** dedissent, et tempestātem fer-
rent facilius et in vadīs cōnsisterent tūtius et ab **aestū** relictae nihil
saxa et **cautīs** timērent; quārum rērum omnium nostrīs nāvibus
cāsus erat extimēscendus.[10] — DE BELLO GALLICO, III, 13

VOCABULARY

cōpula, ae, f., *grappling hook*   tūtē, *safely*

NOTES

[1] hīs: i.e. of the Veneti.   [2] classī: shows the possessor.   [3] con-
gressus: noun from congredior.   [4] pulsū: noun from pellō.   [5] illīs:
i.e. hīs nāvibus.   [6] iīs: with nocēre.   [7] fīrmitūdō: fīrmus + tūdō.

[8] **adigēbātur:** *was hurled to* (*them*).   [9] **accēdēbat:** *another fact was.*
[10] **extimēscendus:** synonym of **timeō.**

Observe the phrases in the passage, noting how their position in the sentence expresses their relative importance in the mind of Cæsar.

EXERCISE LX

Grammar: A. 372; 573; 574. B. 256, 3; 300, 1. G. 208, 2; 452, 2; 467. H. 302, 6; 649, II.

Inflection: sūmō; turris.

Order of words: the antecedent of a relative is usually placed immediately before it.

CÆSAR SENDS FOR THE ROMAN SHIPS AND THE TWO FLEETS ENGAGE IN BATTLE

Complūribus expugnātīs oppidīs Caesar, ubi intellēxit **frūstrā** tantum labōrem sūmī neque hostium fugam captīs oppidīs reprimī[1] neque iīs[2] nocērī posse, statuit exspectandam **classem.** Quae ubi convēnit ac prīmum ab hostibus vīsa est, circiter ducentae et trīgintā nāvēs eōrum parātissimae atque omnī genere armōrum ōrnātissimae profectae ex **portū** nostrīs adversae cōnstitērunt; neque satis Brūtō, quī classī praeerat, vel tribūnīs mīlitum centuriōnibusque, quibus singulae nāvēs erant attribūtae, **cōnstābat**[3] quid agerent aut quam ratiōnem pugnae īnsisterent. **Rōstrō** enim nocērī nōn posse cognōverant; turribus autem excitātīs, tamen hās altitūdō **puppium** ex barbarīs nāvibus superābat, ut neque ex īnferiōre locō satis commodē tēla adigī possent et missa[4] ā Gallīs gravius acciderent.[5]

<div align="right">DE BELLO GALLICO, III, 14</div>

VOCABULARY

ōrnō, 1, *equip*   excitō, 1, *build up*
attribuō, 3, uī, ūtus, *assign*

NOTES

[1] **reprimī:** re + premō.   [2] **iīs:** dative with **nocērī** used impersonally.
[3] **cōnstābat:** impersonal.   [4] **missa:** understand **ea** referring to **tēla.**
[5] **acciderent:** *fell.*

EXERCISE LXI

Grammar: A. 382, 1; 542; 549. B. 191, 1; 288, 3; 286, 2. G. 356; 584; 586. H. 433, 3; 601, 4; 598.

Inflection: gerō; magis (compare).

Order of words: the beginning of the sentence is a place of emphasis.

HOW THE ROMANS HAVE THE ADVANTAGE IN THE FIGHT

Ūna erat magnō ūsuī rēs praeparāta[1] ā nostrīs, falcēs praeacūtae īnsertae[2] affīxaeque[3] longuriīs, nōn absimilī[4] formā[5] mūrālium[6] falcium. Hīs cum **fūnēs** quī antemnās ad mālōs dēstinābant comprehēnsī adductīque erant, nāvigiō **rēmīs** incitātō praerumpēbantur. Quibus abscīsīs antemnae necessāriō concidēbant, ut, cum omnis Gallicīs[7] nāvibus spēs in **vēlīs** armāmentīsque cōnsisteret, hīs ēreptīs omnis ūsus nāvium ūnō tempore ēriperētur. Reliquum erat **certāmen** positum[8] in virtūte, quā nostrī mīlitēs facile superābant, atque eō magis quod in cōnspectū Caesaris atque omnis exercitūs rēs gerēbātur, ut nūllum paulō fortius factum[9] latēre posset[10]; omnēs enim collēs ac loca superiōra unde erat propinquus dēspectus[11] in **mare** ab exercitū tenēbantur. — DE BELLO GALLICO, III, 14

VOCABULARY

falx, falcis, f., *hook*
praeacūtus, a, um, *sharpened to a point*
longurius, longu'rī, m., *long pole*
antemna, ae, f., *sail-yard*
mālus, ī, m., *mast*
dēstinō, 1, *bind fast to*

comprehendō, 3, hendī, hēnsus, *seize*
nāvigium, nāvi'gī, n., *boat*
praerumpō, 3, rūpī, ruptus, *break off*
abscīdō, 3, cīdī, cīsus, *cut away*
concidō, 3, cidī, ——, *fall*
armāmentum, ī, n., *tackle*
ēripiō, 3, uī, reptus, *tear away*

NOTES

[1] **praeparāta**: composition?   [2] **īnsertae**: participle. English derivative?
[3] **affixae**: participle. English derivative?   [4] **absimilī**: composition?
The prefix has the force of a negative.   [5] **formā**: describes **falcēs**.

[6] **mūrālium: mūrus + ālis,** *belonging to.*   [7] **Gallicīs: Gallia + icus,** English "-ic."   [8] **erat positum:** *depended.*   [9] **factum:** participle of **faciō,** used as a noun.   [10] **posset:** shows a result of **quod . . . gerēbātur.**   [11] **dēspectus:** cf. **cōnspectū** above.

Many English words are derived from words in the passage. Make a list, and observe the relation in meaning between the Latin and the English word.

EXERCISE LXII

Grammar: A. 542; 549. B. 228, 3; 286, 2; 309, 3. G. 584; 586; 587. H. 601, 4; 598.

Inflection: reperiō; bīnī.

Order of words: numeral adjectives and adjectives of quantity usually precede the word which they limit.

A CALM PREVENTS THE FLIGHT OF THE ENEMY AND THE ROMANS ARE VICTORIOUS

Dēiectīs, ut dīximus, antemnīs, cum singulās **bīnae** ac ternae nāvēs circumsteterant, mīlitēs summā vī trānscendere in hostium nāvīs contendēbant. Quod[1] postquam barbarī fierī animadvertērunt, expugnātīs complūribus nāvibus, cum eī reī nūllum reperīrētur auxilium, fugā salūtem petere contendērunt. Ac iam conversīs in eam partem nāvibus quō **ventus** ferēbat, tanta subitō malacia ac tranquillitās[2] exstitit ut sē ex locō movēre nōn possent. Quae quidem rēs ad negōtium cōnficiendum maximē fuit opportūna; nam singulās nostrī **cōnsectātī** expugnāvērunt, ut perpaucae[3] ex omnī numerō noctis interventū[4] ad terram pervenīrent, cum ab hōrā ferē quārtā ūsque ad sōlis occāsum pugnārētur.

<div align="right">DE BELLO GALLICO, III, 15</div>

VOCABULARY

antemna, ae, f., *sail-yard*

trānscendō, 3, scendī, scēnsus, *climb over*

malacia, ae, f., *calm*

exsistō, 3, stitī, ——, *arise*

ūsque, *even*

NOTES

[1] **quod:** a relative.   [2] **tranquillitās:** English derivative?   [3] **perpaucae:** the prefix is intensive.   [4] **interventū: inter + veniō.**

By this battle the war with the Veneti is ended. Cæsar punishes the survivors severely that in the future the rights of ambassadors may be upheld.

EXERCISE LXIII

Grammar: A. 374, *a*; 500, 2; 504. B. 189, 1; 337, 8, *b*, 1; 338, 1, *a*. G. 355; 251, 1; 428. H. 431; 621; 626.

Inflection: nōlō; vōx; duo.

Order of words: the antecedent of a relative is usually placed immediately before it.

SABINUS AMONG THE VENELLI. HE REFUSES TO FIGHT

Dum haec in Venetīs[1] geruntur,[2] Quīntus Titūrius Sabīnus cum iīs cōpiīs quās ā Caesare accēperat in fīnīs Venellōrum pervēnit. Hīs[3] praeerat Viridovīx ac summam imperī tenēbat eārum omnium cīvitātum quae dēfēcerant,[4] ex quibus exercitum magnāsque cōpiās coēgerat; atque hīs paucīs diēbus Aulercī Eburovīcēs Lexoviīque, senātū suō interfectō quod auctōrēs[5] bellī esse nōlēbant,[6] portās[7] clausērunt sēque cum Viridovīce coniūnxērunt; magnaque praetereā multitūdō undique ex Galliā perditōrum hominum latrōnumque convēnerat, et quōs[8] spēs praedandī studiumque bellandī ab agrī cultūrā et cotīdiānō labōre sēvocābat.[9] Sabīnus idōneō[10] omnibus rēbus[11] locō castrīs sēsē tenēbat, cum Viridovīx contrā eum duōrum mīlium spatiō cōnsēdisset cotīdiēque prōductīs cōpiīs pugnandī potestātem faceret, ut iam nōn sōlum hostibus in contemptiōnem[12] Sabīnus venīret sed etiam nostrōrum mīlitum vōcibus nōn nihil[13] carperētur; tantamque opīniōnem timōris praebuit ut iam ad vāllum castrōrum hostēs accēdere audērent. Id eā dē causā faciēbat, quod[14] cum tantā multitūdine hostium, praesertim eō absente quī summam imperī tenēret, nisi aequō locō aut opportūnitāte aliquā datā, lēgātō dīmicandum[15] nōn exīstimābat. — DE BELLO GALLICO, III, 17

VOCABULARY

claudō, 3, sī, sus, *close*

perditus, a, um, *desperate*

latrō, ōnis, m., *robber*

cultūra, ae, f., *cultivation*

sēvocō, 1, *call away*

carpō, 3, carpsī, carptus, *criticize*

NOTES

[1] **Venetīs**: a seacoast tribe in Gaul.   [2] **geruntur**: dum meaning *while* is followed by the present tense.   [3] **hīs**: for the case, consider **praeerat**. [4] **dēfēcerant**: *had revolted*.   [5] **auctōrēs**: augeō + tor. English "author." [6] **nōlēbant**: states Cæsar's reason for **interfectō**, hence indicative.   [7] **portās**: English derivative?   [8] **quōs**: understand iī as antecedent.   [9] **sēvocābat**: sē + vocō. Vocō = appellō.   [10] **idōneō**: *fit*.   [11] **rēbus**: limits idōneō, answering the question "in what respect."   [12] **contemptiōnem**: English derivative?   [13] **nōn nihil**: *somewhat*.   [14] **quod**: causal.   [15] **dīmicandum**: synonym of pugnō.

EXERCISE LXIV

Grammar: A. 367; 531, 2; 573; 574. B. 187, II, *a*; 282, 2; 300, 1. G. 346; 630; 452, 2; 467. H. 426, 1; 590; 649, II.

Inflection: volō; homō; libenter (compare).

Order of words: a genitive, unless emphatic, follows the noun which it limits.

THE TRICK OF SABINUS TO GET THE ENEMY TO ATTACK THE CAMP

Hāc[1] cōnfirmātā opīniōne timōris idōneum quendam hominem et **callidum** dēlēgit, Gallum, ex iīs quōs auxilī causā[2] sēcum[3] habēbat. Huic[4] magnīs praemiīs pollicitātiōnibusque[5] persuādet utī ad hostīs trānseat, et quid fierī velit ēdocet.[6] Quī ubi prō[7] perfugā ad eōs vēnit, timōrem Rōmānōrum prōpōnit, quibus angustiīs ipse Caesar ā Venetīs premātur[8] docet, neque longius abesse[9] quīn proximā nocte Sabīnus **clam** ex castrīs exercitum ēdūcat et ad Caesarem auxilī ferendī causā proficīscātur. Quod[10] ubi audītum est, conclāmant[11] omnēs **occāsiōnem** negotī[12] bene gerendī āmittendam nōn esse; ad castra īrī oportēre. Multae rēs ad hoc cōnsilium

Gallōs hortābantur,—superiōrum diērum Sabīnī cunctātiō, perfugae
cōnfīrmātiō,[13] inopia cibāriōrum, cui reī **parum** dīligenter ab iīs erat
prōvīsum, spēs Veneticī bellī, et quod[14] ferē libenter hominēs id
quod volunt crēdunt. Hīs rēbus adductī nōn prius[15] Viridovīcem
reliquōsque ducēs ex conciliō dīmittunt quam ab iīs sit concessum
arma utī capiant et ad castra contendant. Quā rē concessā, laetī[16]
ut explōrātā victōriā, sarmentīs virgultīsque collēctīs, quibus fossās
Rōmānōrum compleant, ad castra **pergunt**.

<div align="right">DE BELLO GALLICO, III, 18</div>

VOCABULARY

perfuga, ae, m., *deserter*

cunctātiō, ōnis, f., *hesitation*

cibāria, ōrum, n., *provisions*

libenter, *willingly*

crēdō, 3, didī, ditus, *believe*

laetus, a, um, *glad*

sarmentum, ī, n., *brushwood*

virgultum, ī, n., *bush*

colligō, 3, lēgī, lēctus, *gather*

NOTES

[1] hāc: referring to the account in the preceding chapter.   [2] causā:
for the sake of.   [3] sēcum: i.e. Sabinus.   [4] huic: for the case, con-
sider persuādet.   [5] pollicitātiōnibus: pollicitor + tiō. Pollicitor = polliceor.
[6] ēdocet: synonym of doceō.   [7] prō: *in the guise of.*   [8] premātur: *is
harassed.*   [9] abesse: depends on docet.   [10] quod: the antecedent is the
statement of the Gaul.   [11] conclāmant: compare English "exclamation."
[12] negōtī: synonym of rēs.   [13] cōnfīrmātiō: cōnfīrmō + tiō. This and the
other nouns in the same case are appositives of rēs.   [14] quod: conjunction.
[15] prius: take with quam below.   [16] laetī: translate as if an adverb.

Think of English words from dēlēgit, prōpōnit, proximā, hortābantur,
superiōrum, prōvīsum, crēdunt, compleant, and observe how the meaning of
the Latin word helps to make plain the meaning of the English.

EXERCISE LXV

Grammar: A. 506; 568. B. 338, 3; 339, 2; 297, 1. G. 432, R.;
553, 3. H. 628; 571, 1.

Inflection: fīō; certior; noster.

Order of words: in a phrase the emphatic word is usually placed first.

SABINUS ATTACKS THE ENEMY WHILE THEY ARE AT A DISADVANTAGE AND DEFEATS THEM

Locus erat castrōrum ēditus et paulātim ab īmō acclīvis circiter passūs mīlle. Hūc magnō cursū[1] contendērunt, ut quam minimum[2] spatī ad sē colligendōs armandōsque Rōmānīs darētur, exanimātīque[3] pervēnērunt. Sabīnus suōs hortātus cupientibus[4] signum dat. Impedītīs hostibus propter ea quae ferēbant onera, subitō duābus portīs ēruptiōnem fierī iubet. Factum est[5] opportūnitāte locī, hostium īnscientiā ac dēfatīgātiōne, virtūte mīlitum et superiōrum pugnārum exercitātiōne, ut nē prīmum quidem nostrōrum impetum ferrent ac statim terga verterent.[6] Quōs integrīs vīribus mīlitēs nostrī cōnsecūtī magnum numerum eōrum occīdērunt; reliquōs equitēs[7] **cōnsectātī** paucōs, quī ex fugā **ēvāserant,** relīquērunt. Sīc ūnō tempore et dē nāvālī[8] pugnā Sabīnus et dē Sabīnī victōriā Caesar est certior factus,[9] cīvitātēsque omnēs sē statim Titūriō dēdidērunt.[10] Nam ut[11] ad bella suscipienda Gallōrum **alacer** ac prōmptus est animus, sīc **mollis** ac minimē resistēns ad calamitātēs ferendās mēns[12] eōrum est. — DE BELLO GALLICO, III, 19

VOCABULARY

acclīvis, e, *sloping up*

colligō, 3, lēgī, lēctus, *collect*

īnscientia, ae, f., *ignorance*

dēfatīgātiō, ōnis, f., *exhaustion*

integer, gra, grum, *fresh*

NOTES

[1] cursū: answers the question "how" about contendērunt.   [2] quam minimum: *the least possible*.   [3] exanimātī: *out of breath*.   [4] cupientibus: used substantively; translate by a demonstrative pronoun and a relative clause.   [5] factum est: *it happened*.   [6] verterent: think of the compounds āvertō and convertō.   [7] equitēs: nominative.   [8] nāvālī: nāvis + ālis, *pertaining to*.   [9] est factus: has two subjects.   [10] dēdidērunt: from the same stem is derived the noun dēditiō.   [11] ut: for the meaning, consider the mode of est.   [12] mēns: synonym of animus.

The tribes of Aquitania, in southwestern Gaul, revolt against Crassus, sent among them by Cæsar, and choose as leaders men who have had experience in Spain and know the Roman methods of warfare. After vigorous fighting the enemy's camp is taken and the revolt crushed.

EXERCISE LXVI

Grammar: A. 496: 540. 1. B. 337, 2, *a*, *f*; 286, 1. G. 664; 665; 666; 540. H. 638, I; 588, I.

Inflection: cōnficiō: opus.

Order of words: the preposition regularly precedes the word which it governs.

THE MORINI AND THE MENAPII FROM THEIR FORESTS AND SWAMPS ANNOY THE ROMANS

Eōdem ferē tempore[1] Caesar, etsī prope exācta iam aestās erat, tamen quod omnī Galliā pācātā Morinī Menapiīque supererant quī in armīs essent neque ad eum umquam lēgātōs dē pāce mīsissent, arbitrātus[2] id bellum celeriter cōnficī posse eō exercitum dūxit; quī longē[3] aliā ratiōne ac[4] reliquī Gallī bellum gerere coepērunt. Nam quod intellegēbant maximās nātiōnēs quae proeliō contendissent pulsās superātāsque esse, continentīsque[5] silvās ac palūdēs habēbant, eō sē suaque omnia contulērunt. Ad quārum initium silvārum cum Caesar pervēnisset castraque mūnīre īnstituisset, neque hostis interim vīsus esset, dispersīs in opere nostrīs subitō ex omnibus partibus silvae ēvolāvērunt et in nostrōs impetum fēcērunt. Nostrī celeriter arma cēpērunt eōsque in silvās reppulērunt, et, complūribus interfectīs, longius impedītiōribus locīs secūtī paucōs ex suīs dēperdidērunt. — DE BELLO GALLICO, III, 28

VOCABULARY

exigō, 3, ēgī, āctus, *finish*
umquam, *ever*

ēvolō, 1, *fly out*
dēperdō, 3, didī, ditus, *lose*

NOTES

[1] tempore: i.e. that of the events referred to in the last note of Exercise LXV.   [2] arbitrātus: synonym of exīstimō.   [3] longē: with aliā.   [4] ac: *than.*   [5] continentīs: *unbroken.*

Select several short phrases from the passage and determine the emphatic word in each phrase.

EXERCISE LXVII

Grammar: A. 345, *a*; 412; 546. B. 203; 220, 1; 288, 1, B. G. 365; 399; 585. H. 440, 3; 473, 3; 600, II, 1.

Inflection: diēs; uterque; quis.

Order of words: the words in a phrase, clause, or sentence are arranged in the order of the development of the thought in the writer's mind.

CÆSAR, HAVING CUT DOWN THE FORESTS, IS DEFEATED BY CONTINUAL RAINSTORMS

Reliquīs deinceps diēbus Caesar silvās **caedere** īnstituit, et, nē quis[1] inermibus imprūdentibusque mīlitibus[2] ab latere impetus fierī posset, omnem eam **māteriam** quae erat caesa conversam ad hostem collocābat et prō vāllō ad utrumque latus exstruēbat. Incrēdibilī celeritāte[3] magnō spatiō paucīs diēbus cōnfectō, cum iam **pecus** atque extrēma[4] impedīmenta ā nostrīs tenērentur, ipsī dēnsiōrēs silvās peterent, eius modī sunt **tempestātēs** cōnsecūtae utī opus necessāriō intermitterētur et continuātiōne[5] imbrium diūtius sub pellibus[6] mīlitēs continērī nōn possent. Itaque vāstātīs omnibus eōrum agrīs, vīcīs aedificiīsque incēnsīs, Caesar exercitum[7] redūxit et in Aulercīs Lexoviīsque, reliquīs item cīvitātibus quae proximē bellum fēcerant, in hībernīs collocāvit.

DE BELLO GALLICO, III, 29

VOCABULARY

deinceps, *in succession*

imprūdēns, imprūdentis, *off one's guard*

imber, bris, m., *rainstorm*

NOTES

[1] **quis:** with **impetus.**   [2] **mīlitibus:** dative.   [3] **celeritāte:** answers the question "how" about **cōnfectō.**   [4] **extrēma:** *the rear of.*   [5] **continuātiōne:** states a reason for **continērī nōn possent.**   [6] **pellibus:** the material used as a covering for the tents.   [7] **exercitum:** with **collocāvit** as well as with **redūxit.**

EXERCISE LXVIII

Grammar: A. 406: 415: 504. B. 217, 1; 224, 1; 338, 1, *a.* G. 398; 400; 428. H. 471; 473, 2; 626.

Inflection: maneō ; domus ; ille.

Order of words: in a phrase or sentence the emphatic word is likely to be placed first.

A DESCRIPTION OF THE SUEBI, WHO HAVE FORCED SOME OF THE OTHER GERMAN TRIBES TO CROSS THE RHINE

Eā quae secūta est **hieme,** quī fuit annus Gnaeō Pompēiō, Mārcō Crassō cōnsulibus, Usipetēs Germānī et item Tencterī magnā cum multitūdine hominum flūmen Rhēnum trānsiērunt nōn longē ā **marī,** quō Rhēnus influit.[1] Causa trānseundī fuit quod[2] ab Suēbīs complūrīs annōs exagitātī bellō premēbantur et agrī cultūrā[3] prohibēbantur. Suēbōrum gēns est longē maxima et bellicōsissima Germānōrum omnium. Hī centum pāgōs habēre dīcuntur, ex quibus quotannīs singula mīlia armātōrum bellandī causā ex fīnibus ēdūcunt. Reliquī, quī domī mānsērunt, sē atque illōs alunt; hī[4] rūrsus invicem annō[5] post in armīs sunt, illī domī remanent. Sīc neque agrī cultūra nec ratiō atque ūsus bellī intermittitur. Sed prīvātī ac sēparātī[6] agrī[7] apud eōs nihil est, neque longius annō remanēre ūnō in locō colendī causā licet. Neque multum frūmentō, sed maximam partem **lacte** atque **pecore** vīvunt, multumque sunt in vēnātiōnibus ; quae rēs et **cibī** genere et cotīdiānā exercitātiōne et lībertāte vītae, quod ā puerīs nūllō officiō aut disciplīnā[8] assuēfactī nihil omnīnō contrā voluntātem faciunt, et vīrīs[9] alit et immānī corporum magnitūdine hominēs efficit. Atque in eam sē cōnsuētūdinem addūxērunt ut locīs[10] frīgidissimīs[11] neque vestītūs praeter pellīs habērent quicquam, quārum propter exiguitātem magna est corporis pars aperta, et lavārentur in flūminibus.

DE BELLO GALLICO, IV, 1

VOCABULARY

exagitō, 1, *harass*

gēns, gentis, f., *tribe*

bellicōsus, a, um, *warlike*

quotannīs, *every year*

alō, 3, uī, tus, *support*

invicem, *in turn*

colō, 3, uī, cultus, *till, cultivate*

vīvō, 3, vīxī, vīctum, *live*

vēnātiō, ōnis, f., *hunting*

vīta, ae, f., *life* (vitality)

assuēfaciō, 3, fēcī, factus, *train*

immānis, e, *huge*

vestītus, ūs, m., *clothing*

exiguitās, ātis, f., *scantiness*

apertus, a, um, *uncovered*

lavō, 1, lāvī, lautus, *bathe* (lav⸱

NOTES

[1] īnfluit: composition? [2] quod: conjunction. [3] cultūrā: English derivative? [4] hī: i.e. reliquī. [5] annō: expresses degree of difference with post. [6] sēparātī: English derivative? [7] agrī: take with nihil. [8] disciplīnā: English derivative? [9] vīrīs: from vīs. [10] locīs: ablative absolute expressing concession. [11] frīgidissimīs: English derivative?

EXERCISE LXIX

Grammar: A. 345; 373; 410; 416. B. 203, 5; 190; 218, 1; 225. G. 365; 366; 349; 407; 404. H. 440, 3; 447; 430; 477, 1; 478, 1.

Inflection: dēsiliō; vēstīgium.

Order of words: the limiting word is likely to precede the word which it limits.

THE SCORN OF THE SUEBI FOR THE CUSTOMS AND PRODUCTS OF FOREIGNERS

Mercātōribus[1] est aditus magis eō, ut quae[2] bellō cēperint quibus vēndant habeant, quam quō[3] ūllam rem ad sē importārī dēsīderent.[4] Quīn etiam iūmentīs, quibus maximē Gallī dēlectantur quaeque impēnsō parant pretiō, Germānī importātīs[5] nōn ūtuntur, sed quae sunt apud eōs nāta, parva atque dēfōrmia, haec cotīdiānā exercitātiōne summī ut sint labōris efficiunt. Equestribus proeliīs saepe ex equīs **dēsiliunt** ac pedibus proeliantur,[6] equōsque eōdem remanēre **vēstīgiō** assuēfēcērunt, ad quōs sē celeriter, cum ūsus est, recipiunt;

neque eōrum mōribus turpius quicquam aut inertius habētur[7] quam ephippiīs ūtī. Itaque ad quemvīs numerum ephippiātōrum[8] equitum **quamvīs** paucī adīre audent. Vīnum omnīnō ad sē importārī nōn patiuntur, quod eā rē ad labōrem ferendum remollēscere hominēs atque effēminārī arbitrantur.[9] — DE BELLO GALLICO, IV, 2

VOCABULARY

iūmentum, ī, n., *beast of burden*

dēlectō, 1, *delight*

impēnsus, a, um, *excessive, high*

dēfōrmis, e, *misshapen*

assuēfaciō, 3, fēcī, factus, *train*

turpis, e, *disgraceful*

iners, inertis, *unskillful*

ephippium, ephippī, n., *saddle cloth*

vīnum, ī, n., *wine*

remollēscō, 3, ——, ——, *lose strength*

effēminō, 1, *make womanish*

NOTES

[1] mercātōribus: dative showing the possessor. [2] quae: understand ea, object of vēndant, as antecedent. [3] quō: *because.* [4] dēsīderent: synonym of cupiō. [5] importātīs: with iūmentīs. [6] proeliantur: from proelium. [7] habētur: *is considered.* [8] ephippiātōrum: ephippium + ātus, *provided with.* [9] arbitrantur: synonym of exīstimō.

The Usipetes and the Tencteri, German tribes, forced by the Suebi, cross the Rhine and invade the territory of the Menapii in the extreme northern part of Gaul. They conquer these and seize their towns and property.
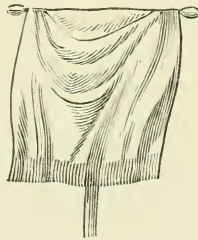
VEXILLUM

EXERCISE LXX

Grammar: A. 343, *b*; 354. *b*; 573. B. 198, 3; 209, 1; 300, 1, N.
G. 366; 377; 452, 2. H. 447; 457; 649, II.

Inflection: paenitet; certior.

Order of words: demonstrative, relative, and interrogative pronouns
usually precede the words which they modify.

CÆSAR FEARS THE FICKLENESS AND CREDULITY OF THE GAULS

Hīs dē rēbus[1] Caesar certior factus et īnfīrmitātem[2] Gallōrum
veritus, quod sunt in cōnsiliīs capiendīs mōbilēs et novīs plērumque
rēbus student, nihil hīs committendum[3] exīstimāvit. Est enim hoc
Gallicae cōnsuētūdinis,[4] utī et viātōrēs[5] etiam invītōs cōnsistere
cōgant, et quid quisque eōrum dē quāque rē audierit aut cognōverit
quaerant, et mercātōrēs in oppidīs vulgus circumsistat,[6] quibusque
ex regiōnibus veniant quāsque ibi rēs cognōverint **prōnūntiāre** cōgat.
Hīs rēbus atque audītiōnibus[7] permōtī dē summīs saepe rēbus
cōnsilia ineunt, quōrum eōs in **vēstīgiō paenitēre** necesse est, cum
incertīs rūmōribus serviant, et plērīque ad voluntātem eōrum ficta
respondeant. — DE BELLO GALLICO, IV, 5

VOCABULARY

mōbilis, e, *changeable*

necesse (indeclinable), *necessary*

serviō, 4, **īvī, ītum,** *be a slave, serve*

NOTES

[1] **hīs rēbus:** i.e. the advance of the Usipetes and the Tencteri.   [2] **īnfīr-
mitātem:** in + fīrmus + tās.   [3] **committendum:** understand esse.   [4] **cōn-
suētūdinis:** predicate genitive.   [5] **viātōrēs:** via + tor.   [6] **circumsistat:**
for the mood, compare **cōgant.**   [7] **audītiōnibus:** audiō + tiō; *reports.*

Cæsar demands that the Germans leave Gaul, but they say that they
cannot endure the Suebi. He then proposes that they settle among the
Ubii, just on the other side of the Rhine. The Germans ask that Cæsar
remain where he is while this proposal is being considered, but Cæsar
thinks this is a ruse to gain time.

EXERCISE LXXI

Grammar: A. 393, *a*; 406. B. 177, 1, 3; 217, 1. G. 340, *b*, R. 1; 398. H. 410, 1; 471.

Inflection: orior; avis.

Order of words: a dependent genitive, unless emphatic, usually follows the word which it limits.

THE COURSE OF THE MEUSE AND THE RHINE

Mosa prōfluit[1] ex monte Vosegō, quī est in fīnibus Lingonum, et parte quādam ex Rhēnō receptā, quae appellātur Vacalus,[2] **īnsulam** efficit Batāvōrum neque longius inde[3] mīlibus passuum octōgintā in Ōceanum īnfluit.[4] Rhēnus autem oritur ex Lepontiīs, quī Alpīs incolunt, et longō spatiō per fīnīs Nantuātium, Helvētiōrum, Sēquanōrum, Mediomatricum, Tribocōrum, Trēverōrum citātus[5] fertur, et ubi Ōceanō appropinquāvit[6] in plūrīs diffluit[7] partīs multīs ingentibusque īnsulīs effectīs, quārum pars magna ā ferīs barbarīsque nātiōnibus incolitur (ex quibus sunt quī piscibus atque ōvīs **avium** vīvere exīstimantur), multīsque capitibus in Ōceanum īnfluit.

<div align="right">De Bello Gallico, IV, 10</div>

VOCABULARY

citātus, a, um, *swift*	ōvum, ī, n.. *egg*
ingēns, ingentis, *huge*	vīvō, 3, vīxī, vīctum, *live*
piscis, is, m., *fish*	

NOTES

[1] prōfluit: composition?   [2] Vacalus: predicate nominative.   [3] inde: i. e. ab īnsulā.   [4] īnfluit: composition?   [5] citātus: give it the force of an adverb.   [6] appropinquāvit: the root is found in the adverb **prope.**
[7] diffluit: composition?

EXERCISE LXXII

Grammar: A. 504, *a*; 506; 563. B. 338, 1, *a*, 5; 339, 2; 295, 1.
G. 428; 432; 546. H. 626; 628; 565.

Inflection: revertor; iūs; ipse.

Order of words: commonly temporal clauses precede, and purpose
clauses follow, the verb on which they depend.

THE GERMANS ASK CÆSAR NOT TO ADVANCE AND NOT TO FIGHT FOR A FEW DAYS

Caesar cum ab hoste nōn amplius passuum duodecim mīlibus
abesset, ut[1] erat cōnstitūtum, ad eum lēgātī revertuntur; quī in
itinere congressī magnopere nē longius prōgrederētur[2] ōrābant.
Cum id nōn impetrāssent, petēbant utī ad eōs equitēs quī agmen
antecessissent praemitteret eōsque pugnā prohibēret, sibique ut
potestātem faceret[3] in Ubiōs lēgātōs mittendī; quōrum[4] sī prīncipēs
ac senātus sibi iūre iūrandō fidem fēcisset, eā condiciōne quae ā
Caesare ferrētur[5] sē ūsūrōs ostendēbant; ad hās rēs cōnficiendās
sibi trīduī spatium daret.[6] Haec omnia Caesar eōdem illō pertinēre
arbitrābātur,[7] ut trīduī morā interpositā equitēs eōrum quī abessent
reverterentur; tamen sēsē nōn longius mīlibus passuum quattuor
aquātiōnis causā prōcessūrum eō diē dīxit; hūc posterō diē quam[8]
frequentissimī convenīrent, ut dē eōrum postulātīs[9] cognōsceret.
Interim ad praefectōs, quī cum omnī equitātū antecesserant, mittit
quī nūntiārent nē hostīs proeliō lacesserent, et, sī ipsī lacesserentur,
sustinērent **quoad** ipse cum exercitū propius accessisset.

<div align="right">DE BELLO GALLICO, IV, 11</div>

VOCABULARY

antecēdō, 3, cessī, cessum, *go ahead*
aquātiō, ōnis, f., *getting water*

frequēns, frequentis, *in large
   numbers*

NOTES

[1] ut: *as.*   [2] prōgrederētur: the root of this word is found in gradus, *step*.
[3] potestātem faceret: *give an opportunity*.   [4] quōrum: the antecedent is
Ubiōs. Cæsar's proposal was that the Germans should settle in this tribe's

territory.   [5] **ferrētur**: *was proposed*.   [6] **daret**: in the words of the Germans this was an imperative.   [7] **arbitrābātur**: synonym of **exīstimō**. [8] **quam**: *possible*.   [9] **postulātīs**: participle of **postulō** used as a noun.

EXERCISE LXXIII

Grammar: A. 370; 382; 403, *a*. B. 187, III; 191, 1; 215. G. 347; 356; 395. H. 429; 433; 467; 469, 2.

Inflection: cadō; frāter; timēns.

Order of words: the possessive adjectives, unless emphatic, follow the noun which they modify.

IN A CAVALRY SKIRMISH WITH THE ENEMY THE ROMANS LOSE SEVERAL MEN

At hostēs, ubi prīmum nostrōs equitēs cōnspexērunt,[1] quōrum erat quīnque mīlium numerus, cum ipsī nōn amplius octingentōs equitēs habērent, quod iī quī frūmentandī causā ierant trāns Mosam nōndum redierant, nihil timentibus nostrīs, quod lēgātī eōrum paulō[2] ante ā Caesare discesserant atque is diēs indūtiīs erat ab hīs petītus, impetū factō celeriter nostrōs perturbāvērunt; rūrsus hīs resistentibus cōnsuētūdine suā ad pedēs **dēsiluērunt**, suffossīsque equīs complūribusque nostrīs dēiectīs reliquōs in fugam coniēcērunt, atque ita perterritōs ēgērunt ut nōn prius[3] fugā dēsisterent quam in cōnspectum agminis nostrī vēnissent. In eō proeliō ex equitibus nostrīs interficiuntur quattuor et **septuāgintā,** in hīs vir fortissimus Pīsō Aquītānus, amplissimō genere[4] nātus, cuius avus in cīvitāte suā rēgnum obtinuerat amīcus ā senātū nostrō appellātus. Hīc cum frātrī interclūsō ab hostibus auxilium ferret, illum ex perīculō ēripuit, ipse equō vulnerātō dēiectus **quoad** potuit fortissimē restitit; cum circumventus multīs vulneribus acceptīs cecidisset, atque id frāter, quī iam proeliō excesserat, procul animadvertisset, incitātō equō sē hostibus obtulit[5] atque interfectus est.

DE BELLO GALLICO, IV, 12

VOCABULARY

octingentī, ae, a, *eight hundred*

frūmentor, 1, *forage*

indūtiae, ārum, f., *truce*

suffodiō, 3, fōdī, fossus, *stab from below*

avus, ī, m., *grandfather*

ēripiō, 3, uī, reptus, *rescue*

procul, *from a distance*

NOTES

[1] cōnspexērunt: compare with dēspiciō and cōnspectus.   [2] paulō: synonym of parvō.   [3] prius: take with quam following.   [4] genere: *lineage*.
[5] obtulit: ob + ferō. English derivative?

The passage contains many words from which English words are derived. Make a list.

Cæsar distrusts the Gauls, and when after the battle their representatives come to him to make excuses, he has them arrested, and at once sets out with the army for their camp. Before they know what is going on, he storms their camp and inflicts on them fearful punishment. Because of the trouble which the Germans keep causing him, Cæsar determines to cross the Rhine and attack them.
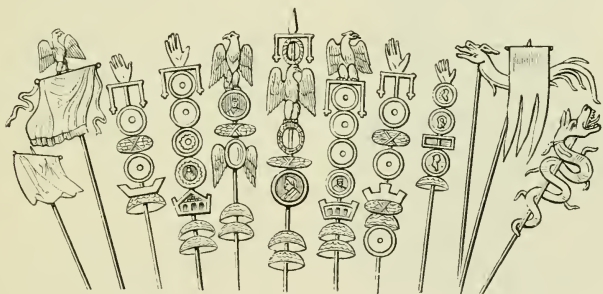
SIGNA MILITARIA

EXERCISE LXXIV

Grammar: A. 343, *b*; 374, *a*; 414, *a*. B. 198, 3; 189, 1; 223. G. 366; 355; 403. H. 447; 431; 479, 1.

Inflection: dēfīgō; aqua; bīnī.

Order of words: in a phrase or sentence the emphatic word is commonly placed first.

A DESCRIPTION OF THE BRIDGE THAT CÆSAR BUILT ACROSS THE RHINE

Caesar hīs dē causīs quās commemorāvī Rhēnum trānsīre dēcrēverat; sed nāvibus trānsīre[1] neque satis tūtum esse arbitrābātur neque suae neque populī Rōmānī dignitātis[2] esse[3] statuēbat.
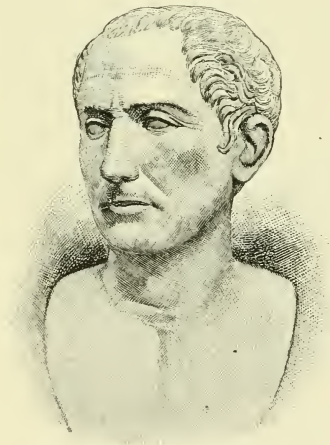
Itaque, etsī summa difficultās faciendī pontis prōpōnēbātur propter lātitūdinem, rapiditātem,[4] altitūdinemque flūminis, tamen id sibi contendendum aut aliter nōn trādūcendum exercitum exīstimāvit. Ratiōnem pontis hanc īnstituit. Tigna **bīna** sēsquipedālia[5] paulum ab īmō[6] praeacūta, dīmēnsa ad altitūdinem flūminis, intervāllō pedum duōrum inter sē iungēbat. Haec cum māchinātiōnibus **immissa** in flūmen **dēfīxerat** fistūcīsque adēgerat, nōn sublicae modō[7] dērēctē ad perpendiculum,[8] sed **prōnē** ac fastīgātē, ut secundum[9]

GAIUS IULIUS CAESAR

nātūram flūminis prōcumberent, iīs item contrāria duo ad eundem modum iūncta, intervāllō pedum quadrāgēnum ab īnferiōre parte[10] contrā vim atque impetum flūminis conversa statuēbat. Haec utraque īnsuper bipedālibus[11] trabibus immissīs, quantum eōrum
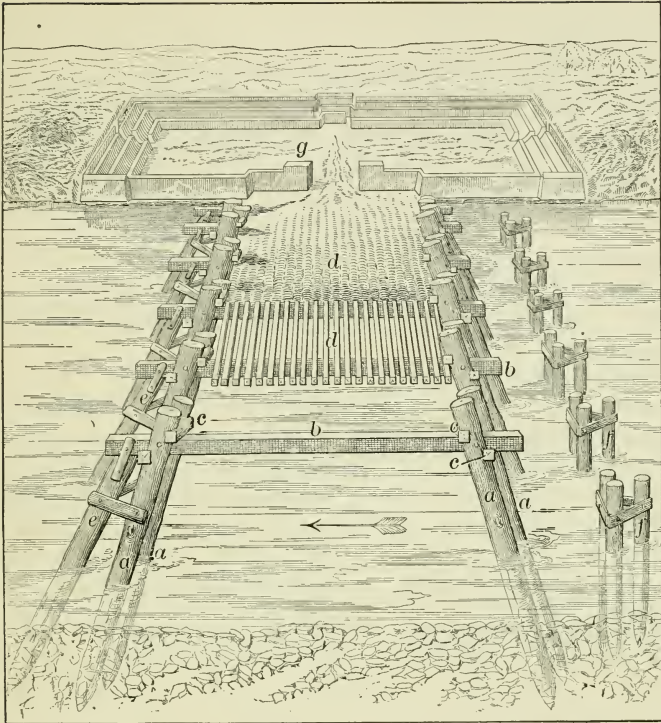
PONS A CAESARE IN RHENO FACTUS

aa, tigna bina sesquipedalia ; *bb*, trabes bipedales ; *cc*, fibulae ;
dd, derecta materia longuriis cratibusque constrata ;
ee, sublicae ad inferiorem partem fluminis pro ariete oblique actae ;
ff, sublicae supra pontem immissae ;
g, castellum ad caput pontis positum.

tignōrum iūnctūra[12] **distābat,** bīnīs utrimque fibulīs ab extrēmā
parte distinēbantur[13]; quibus disclūsīs atque in contrāriam partem
revinctīs[14] tanta erat operis firmitūdō[15] atque ea[16] rērum nātūra ut,
quō maior vīs **aquae** sē incitāvisset, hōc artius illigāta tenērentur.
Haec dērēctā **māteriā** iniectā contexēbantur ac longuriīs crātibusque

cōnsternēbantur; ac nihilō sētius sublicae et ad īnferiōrem partem
flūminis oblīquē [17] agēbantur, quae prō ariete subiectae et cum omnī
opere coniūnctae vim flūminis exciperent, et aliae item suprā pontem
mediocrī spatiō, ut, sī arborum truncī sīve nāvēs dēiciendī operis
causā essent ā barbarīs immissae, hīs dēfēnsōribus [18] eārum rērum
vīs minuerētur neu pontī nocērent. — DE BELLO GALLICO, IV, 17

VOCABULARY

commemorō, 1, *mention*

dēcernō, 3, crēvī, crētus, *decide*

tūtus, a, um, *safe*

tignum, ī, n., *timber*

praeacūtus, a, um, *sharpened to a point*

dīmētior, 4, mēnsus, *measure off*

māchinātiō, ōnis, f., *mechanical contrivance*

fistūca, ae, f., *pile driver*

sublica, ae, f., *pile*

dērēctus, a, um, *straight*

fastīgātē, *sloping*

quadrāgēnī, ae, a, *forty each*

īnsuper, *above*

fībula, ae, f., *brace*

disclūdō, 3, clūsī, clūsus, *hold apart*

artē, *closely*

illigō, 1, *bind*

contexō, 3, uī, tus, *join together*

longurius, longu'rī, m., *long pole*

crātēs, ium, f., *wicker work*

cōnsternō, 3, strāvī, strātus, *spread over*

sētius, *less*

ariēs, ietis, m., *prop*

mediocris, e, *moderate*

truncus, ī, m., *trunk*

NOTES

[1] trānsīre: substantive infinitive, subject of esse.   [2] dignitātis: English derivative? This is a genitive of possession.   [3] esse: *belong*.   [4] rapiditātem: English derivative?   [5] sēsquipedālia: sēsqui, *one half more*, + pēs + ālis, *pertaining to*.   [6] īmō: *end*.   [7] modō: *after the manner*.   [8] perpendiculum: English derivative?   [9] secundum: *according to*.   [10] ab īnferiōre parte: *below the bridge*.   [11] bipedālibus: bi, *two*. Compare sēsquipedālibus.   [12] iūnctūra: iungō + tūra.   [13] distinēbantur: dis + teneō.   [14] revinctis: *fastened back*.   [15] fīrmitūdō: composition?   [16] ea: *such*.   [17] oblīquē: English derivative?   [18] dēfēnsōribus: dēfendō + tor.

Cæsar leads his army across and devastates the territory. He promises the Ubii his help if the Suebi trouble them. He learns that the Suebi have retreated. So having accomplished his purpose, he returns to Gaul and destroys the bridge. He then determines to visit Britain because from there help is sent regularly to the enemies of the Romans in Gaul.

EXERCISE LXXV

Grammar: A. 496; 506. B. 337, 2, *a*, *f*; 338, 3. G. 665; 666; 432, R. H. 638, 1; 628.

Inflection: nāvigō; portus; plānus.

Order of words: the first word in a sentence often refers to something mentioned in the preceding sentence. For this reason a sentence often begins with a relative or demonstrative pronoun.

CÆSAR SAILS TO INVADE BRITAIN AND SEEKS A PLACE TO DISEMBARK

Hīs cōnstitūtīs rēbus[1] nactus[2] idōneam ad **nāvigandum tempestātem** tertiā ferē vigiliā solvit,[3] equitēsque in ulteriōrem **portum**[4] prōgredī[5] et nāvīs **cōnscendere** et sē sequī iussit. Ā quibus cum paulō tardius[6] esset administrātum, ipse hōrā diēī circiter quārtā cum prīmīs nāvibus Britanniam attigit[7] atque ibi in omnibus collibus expositās hostium cōpiās armātās cōnspexit. Cuius locī haec[8] erat nātūra, atque ita montibus[9] angustē[10] **mare** continēbātur, utī ex locīs superiōribus in **lītus** tēlum adigī posset. Hunc ad ēgrediendum nēquāquam idōneum locum arbitrātus, dum reliquae nāvēs eō convenīrent, ad hōram nōnam in **ancorīs** exspectāvit. Interim lēgātīs tribūnīsque mīlitum convocātīs et quae ex Volusēnō[11] cognōvisset et quae fierī vellet ostendit, monuitque, ut[12] reī mīlitāris ratiō, maximē ut[12] maritimae rēs postulārent, ut quae celerem atque īnstabilem **mōtum** habērent, ad nūtum et ad tempus omnēs rēs ab iīs administrārentur.[13] Hīs dīmissīs et **ventum** et **aestum** ūnō tempore nactus secundum, datō signō et sublātīs ancorīs circiter mīlia passuum **septem** ab eō locō prōgressus apertō ac **plānō** lītore nāvīs cōnstituit. — DE BELLO GALLICO, IV, 23

VOCABULARY

solvō, 3, solvī, solūtus, *set sail*
expōnō, 3, posuī, positus, *array*
adigō, 3, ēgī, āctus, *drive, hurl*

nēquāquam, *by no means*
īnstabilis, e, *unsteady*

NOTES

[1] **hīs rēbus**: i.e. preparations for the voyage.   [2] **nactus**: *having met with*.
[3] **solvit**: probably from Portus Itius, which is perhaps the modern Boulogne,
though some authorities identify it with Wissant, a town about ten miles
from Calais.   [4] **portum**: perhaps the harbor of Ambleteuse.   [5] **prōgredī**:
compare with **ēgredior**, noting the prefix.   [6] **tardius**: adverb.   English
derivative?   [7] **Britanniam attigit**: somewhere near Dover.   [8] **haec**:
such.   [9] **montibus**: *cliffs*.   [10] **angustē**: *closely*.   [11] **Volusēnō**: Cæsar
had sent him ahead to find out what he could, but he had not dared to
land.   [12] **ut, maximē ut**: *as, especially as*.   [13] **administrārentur**: states
the purpose of **monuit**.

EXERCISE LXXVI

Grammar: A. 349, *a*; 374, *a*; 410. B. 204, 1; 189, 1; 218, 1.
G. 374; 355; 407. H. 450; 451, 1; 431; 477.

Inflection: ūtor; aqua; audācter.

Order of words: a prepositional phrase usually precedes the word
which it limits.

THE OBSTACLES WHICH THE ROMANS FACE IN TRYING TO LAND

At barbarī cōnsiliō Rōmānōrum cognitō, praemissō equitātū et
essedāriīs,[1] quō plērumque[2] genere in proeliīs ūtī cōnsuērunt, reli-
quīs cōpiīs subsecūtī[3] nostrōs nāvibus ēgredī prohibēbant. Erat ob
hās causās summa difficultās, quod nāvēs propter magnitūdinem
nisi[4] in altō cōnstituī[5] nōn poterant, mīlitibus[6] autem ignōtīs locīs,
impedītīs manibus, magnō et gravī onere armōrum pressīs, simul et
dē nāvibus **dēsiliendum** et in **flūctibus** cōnsistendum et cum hostibus
erat pugnandum; cum illī[7] aut ex **āridō** aut paulum in **aquam** prō-
gressī, omnibus membrīs expedītīs, **nōtissimīs** locīs audācter tēla
conicerent et equōs īnsuēfactōs incitārent. Quibus rēbus nostrī
perterritī atque huius omnīnō generis pugnae imperītī nōn eādem
alacritāte ac studiō quō in pedestribus ūtī proeliīs cōnsuērant
ūtēbantur. — De Bello Gallico, IV, 24

VOCABULARY

essedārius, essedārī, m.,
charioteer

membrum, ī, n., *limb*

īnsuēfactus, a, um, *trained*

imperītus, a, um, *unskilled*

alacritās, ātis, f., *eagerness*

NOTES

[1] essedāriīs: understand praemissīs.   [2] plērumque: synonym of maximē.
[3] subsecūtī: sub, *closely*.   [4] nisi: *except*.   [5] cōnstituī: *be moored*.
[6] mīlitibus: with dēsiliendum, etc.   [7] illī: i.e. barbarī.

Think of English words from genere, prohibēbant, manibus, gravī, onere, flūctibus, alacritāte, and observe how the meaning of each is related to that of the Latin word.

EXERCISE LXXVII

Grammar: A, 382, 1 ; 384 ; 563, *a*. B. 191, 2, *a* ; 192, 1 ; 295, 1, *a*. G. 356, R. 3 ; 359 ; 423, 2, N. 6. H. 433 ; 434, 2 ; 565, 3.

Inflection: cunctor ; mare ; expedītior.

Order of words: the antecedent of a relative is usually placed immediately before it.

CÆSAR, IN FORCING BACK THE ENEMY, IS HELPED BY THE BRAVE ACT OF A ROMAN SOLDIER

Quod[1] ubi Caesar animadvertit, nāvīs longās, quārum et speciēs erat barbarīs inūsitātior et **mōtus** ad ūsum expedītior, paulum removērī[2] ab **onerāriīs** nāvibus et **rēmīs** incitārī et ad[3] latus apertum hostium cōnstituī,[4] atque inde fundīs, **sagittīs,** tormentīs hostīs prōpellī ac submovērī iussit ; quae rēs magnō ūsuī nostrīs fuit. Nam et nāvium figūrā[5] et rēmōrum mōtū et inūsitātō genere tormentōrum permōtī barbarī cōnstitērunt ac paulum etiam pedem rettulērunt.[6] Atque nostrīs mīlitibus **cunctantibus,** maximē propter altitūdinem **maris,** quī[7] decimae legiōnis **aquilam**[8] ferēbat, obtestātus deōs ut ea rēs legiōnī fēlīciter **ēvenīret,** ''**Dēsilīte,**'' inquit,[9] ''commīlitōnēs, nisi vultis aquilam hostibus prōdere ; ego certē meum reī pūblicae atque imperātōrī officium praestiterō.'' Hoc cum vōce magnā

dīxisset, sē ex nāvī prōiēcit atque in hostīs aquilam ferre coepit.
Tum nostrī cohortātī inter sē nē tantum **dēdecus** admitterētur ūni-
versī[10] ex nāvī dēsiluērunt. Hōs item ex proximīs nāvibus cum
cōnspexissent, subsecūtī hostibus appropinquāvērunt.

<div align="right">DE BELLO GALLICO, IV, 25</div>

VOCABULARY

inūsitātus, a, um, *unusual*

funda, ae, f., *sling*

tormentum, ī, n., *military engine*

prōpellō, 3, pulī, pulsus, *force back*

submoveō, 2, mōvī, mōtus, *drive off*

obtestor, 1, *appeal to*

deus, ī, m., *god*

fēlīciter, *happily*

commīlitō, ōnis, m., *fellow soldier*

prōdō, 3, didī, ditus, *betray*

meus, a, um, *my, mine*

admittō, 3, mīsī, missus, *permit*

NOTES

[1] **quod**: i.e. the difficulty of landing.   [2] **removērī**: depends on **iussit**.
[3] **ad**: *off*.   [4] **cōnstituī**: *to be moored*.   [5] **figūrā**: states a cause of **permōtī**.
English derivative?   [6] **pedem rettulērunt**: *fell back*.   [7] **quī**: the ante-
cedent is the subject of **inquit** below.   [8] **aquilam**: the standard of the
legion.   [9] **inquit**: synonym of **dīcō**.   [10] **ūniversī**: adjective. English
derivative?

EXERCISE LXXVIII

Grammar: A. 315, *c*: 370. B. 253, 2; 187, III. G. 319; 347.
H. 516, 1; 429.

Inflection: possum; lītus; alius.

Order of words: prepositions regularly precede the words which they
govern.

AFTER A SHARP FIGHT CÆSAR MAKES A LANDING AND ROUTS THE ENEMY

Pugnātum est[1] ab utrīsque ācriter. Nostrī tamen, quod neque
ōrdinēs servāre neque fīrmiter īnsistere[2] neque signa subsequī
poterant, atque alius aliā ex nāvī quibuscumque signīs occurrerat
sē aggregābat, magnopere perturbābantur; hostēs vērō **nōtīs**

omnibus vadīs, ubi ex lītore[3] aliquōs singulāris ex nāvī ēgredientīs
cōnspexerant, incitātīs equīs impedītōs adoriēbantur, plūrēs paucōs
circumsistēbant,[4] aliī ab[5] latere apertō in ūniversōs[6] tēla conìciēbant.
Quod cum animadvertisset Caesar, scaphās longārum nāvium, item
speculātōria nāvigia mīlitibus complērī iussit, et quōs[7] labōrantīs
cōnspexerat, hīs subsidia submittēbat. Nostrī simul in āridō cōn-
stitērunt, suīs omnibus cōnsecūtīs in hostīs impetum fēcērunt atque
eōs in fugam dedērunt; neque longius prōsequī potuērunt, quod
equitēs cursum tenēre atque īnsulam capere nōn potuerant. Hoc
ūnum ad prīstinam fortūnam Caesarī dēfuit.

<div align="right">DE BELLO GALLICO, IV, 26</div>

VOCABULARY

servō, 1, *keep*	scapha, ae, f., *skiff*
aggregō, 1, *attach* (lit. *crowd to*)	speculātōrius, a, um, *spy*
singulāris, e, *one by one*	nāvigium, nāvi´gī, n., *boat*

NOTES

[1] pugnātum est: translate by a personal form.   .[2] īnsistere: synonym of
cōnsistō.   [3] ex lītore: with cōnspexerant.   [4] circumsistēbant: compare
with īnsistō and cōnsistō.   [5] ab: *on.*   [6] ūniversōs: *the main body.*
[7] quōs: the antecedent is hīs.

Think of English words from aggregābat, cōnspexerant, incitātīs, latere,
apertō, subsidia, āridō, īnsulam, and observe the connection in meaning
between the Latin word and the English derivative.

The Britons ask for peace after the first battle, but again renew hos-
tilities. Cæsar defeats them, but a storm and the tide damage his fleet,
and, after receiving offers of peace once more, he returns to Gaul.

EXERCISE LXXIX

Grammar: A. 382, 1; 500, 4; 531, 2. B. 191, 1; 337, 8, *b*, 2; 382, 2.
G. 356; 430; 630. H. 433; 622; 590.

Inflection: reficiō; aestus; humilior.

Order of words: a genitive, unless emphatic, usually follows the noun
which it limits.

CÆSAR GIVES ORDERS FOR THE BUILDING OF A FLEET,
AND THEN SETTLES A QUESTION OF DAMAGES WITH
THE PIRUSTÆ

Lūciō Domitiō, Appiō Claudiō cōnsulibus discēdēns ab hībernīs
Caesar in Ītaliam, ut quotannīs facere cōnsuērat, lēgātīs imperat,
quōs legiōnibus praefēcerat, utī quam plūrimās possint **hieme** nāvīs
aedificandās[1] veterēsque **reficiendās** cūrent. Eārum modum fōr-
mamque[2] dēmōnstrat. Ad celeritātem onerandī subductiōnisque
paulō facit **humiliōrēs** quam quibus[3] in nostrō **marī** ūtī cōnsuē-
vimus, atque id eō[4] magis, quod propter crēbrās commūtātiōnēs
aestuum minus magnōs ibi **flūctūs** fierī[5] cognōverat; ad onera ac
multitūdinem iūmentōrum trānsportandam paulō lātiōrēs quam
quibus in reliquīs ūtimur maribus. Hās omnīs āctuāriās imperat
fierī, quam ad rem multum humilitās[6] adiuvat. Ea quae sunt ūsuī
ad armandās nāvīs ex Hispāniā apportārī[7] iubet. Ipse conventibus[8]
Galliae citeriōris **perāctīs** in Īllyricum proficīscitur, quod ā Pīrustīs
fīnitimam partem prōvinciae incursiōnibus vāstārī audiēbat. Eō
cum vēnisset, cīvitātibus mīlitēs imperat[9] certumque in locum con-
venīre iubet. Quā rē nūntiātā Pīrustae lēgātōs ad eum mittunt,
quī doceant nihil eārum rērum pūblicō factum cōnsiliō, sēsēque
parātōs esse dēmōnstrent omnibus ratiōnibus dē iniūriīs satisfacere.
Perceptā[10] ōrātiōne eōrum Caesar obsidēs imperat eōsque ad certam
diem addūcī iubet; nisi ita fēcerint, sēsē bellō cīvitātem persecū-
tūrum dēmōnstrat. Iīs ad diem adductīs, ut imperāverat, arbitrōs
inter cīvitātēs dat, quī lītem aestiment poenamque cōnstituant.

DE BELLO GALLICO, V, 1

VOCABULARY

quotannīs, *every year*

onerō, 1, *load*

subductiō, ōnis, f., *beaching*

iūmentum, ī, n., *beast of burden*

āctuārius, a, um, *swift*

incursiō, ōnis, f., *raid*

satisfaciō, 3, fēcī, factus, *give
   satisfaction*

arbiter, trī, m., *referee*

līs, lītis, f., *damages*

aestimō, 1, *assess*

poena, ae, f., *penalty*

NOTES

¹ **nāvīs aedificandās:** Cæsar intended to make a second expedition to Britain. ² **fōrmam:** English derivative? ³ **quibus:** understand **eās** as antecedent. ⁴ **eō:** *for this reason.* ⁵ **fierī:** *become.* ⁶ **humilitās:** derivation? ⁷ **apportārī:** ad + portō. ⁸ **conventibus:** the courts of justice over which the provincial governor presided. ⁹ **imperat:** *levies.* ¹⁰ **perceptā:** synonym of **cognōscō.**

Think of English words from **aedificandās, onera, conventibus, doceant, arbitrōs, aestiment,** and observe how the meaning of the Latin word helps to make plain the meaning of the English.

Six hundred ships of the kind described above and twenty-eight war vessels are built for Cæsar. He orders them to assemble at Portus Itius, ready for the passage to Britain. He himself with four legions and eight hundred horsemen invades the land of the Treveri, who have disregarded his commands.

EXERCISE LXXX

Grammar: A. 418; 564; 580. B. 226; 296, 2; 314, 1. G. 397; 550, 1, 2; 650. H. 480; 567, 1; 642; 643.

Inflection: ostendō; fidēs; alter.

Order of words: the following arrangement of the modifiers of a verb is common: ablative, indirect object, direct object, adverb, unless changed by emphasis.

HOW THE TWO CHIEFS OF THE TREVERI ACTED ON CÆSAR'S ARRIVAL IN THEIR TERRITORY

Haec cīvitās¹ longē plūrimum² tōtīus Galliae equitātū valet magnāsque habet cōpiās peditum, Rhēnumque, ut suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, tangit. In eā cīvitāte duo dē prīncipātū inter sē contendēbant, Indūtiomārus et Cingetorīx; ex quibus alter, simul atque³ dē Caesaris legiōnumque adventū cognitum est, ad eum⁴ vēnit, sē suōsque omnīs in officiō futūrōs neque ab amīcitiā populī Rōmānī dēfectūrōs cōnfīrmāvit, quaeque in Trēverīs gererentur ostendit. At⁵ Indūtiomārus equitātum peditātumque cōgere, iīsque quī per aetātem in armīs esse nōn poterant in silvam Arduennam⁶

abditīs, quae ingentī magnitūdine[7] per mediōs fīnīs Trēverōrum ā
flūmine Rhēnō ad initium Rēmōrum pertinet, bellum parāre īnsti-
tuit; sed posteāquam[8] nōn nūllī prīncipēs ex eā cīvitāte et auctō-
ritāte Cingetorīgis adductī et adventū nostrī exercitūs perterritī ad
Caesarem vēnērunt et dē suīs prīvātīs rēbus ab eō petere coepērunt,
quoniam cīvitātī cōnsulere[9] nōn possent, veritus nē ab omnibus
dēsererētur lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittit[10]: Sēsē idcircō ab suīs
discēdere atque ad eum venīre nōluisse, quō[11] facilius cīvitātem in
officiō continēret, nē omnis nōbilitātis discessū plēbs propter imprū-
dentiam lāberētur; itaque cīvitātem in suā potestāte esse, sēque,
sī Caesar permitteret, ad eum in castra ventūrum et suās cīvitātisque
fortūnās eius fideī permissūrum. — DE BELLO GALLICO, V, 3

VOCABULARY

tangō, 3, tetigī, tāctus, *touch*
prīncipātus, ūs, m., *leadership*
aetās, ātis, f., *age*
ingēns, ingentis, *huge*

idcircō, *for this reason*
plēbs, plēbis, f., *common people*
lābor, 3, lāpsus, *go wrong*

NOTES

[1] cīvitās: i. e. that of the Trēverī.   [2] plūrimum: with valet; *is the strongest.*
[3] simul atque: *as soon as.*   [4] eum: Caesar.   [5] at: synonym of sed.
[6] Arduennam: *of Ardennes.*   [7] magnitūdine: describes quae.   [8] posteā-
quam: = postquam.   [9] cōnsulere: with dative, *look out for.*   [10] mittit:
the subject refers to Indūtiomārus.   [11] quō: introduces a purpose clause
containing a comparative.

Explain the derivation of adventū, amīcitiā, magnitūdine, imprūdentiam.

Caesar arranges matters with the leaders of the Treveri and goes to
Portus Itius, where he finds the fleet ready for him, with the exception of
sixty ships that have been held back by a storm. The chief men of all the
states have also assembled there, and most of these he decides to take
with him as hostages, fearing an uprising in Gaul while he is away.

EXERCISE LXXXI

Grammar: A. 345; 349, *a*; 504, *b*. B. 203, 1; 204, 1; 338, 1, *a, c.*
G. 365; 374; 428, 2. H. 440, 3; 451, 1; 475, 2; 626.

Inflection: audeō; commūnis; ille.

Order of words: adjectives of quantity, being emphatic, usually precede the word which they modify.

DUMNORIX IS RELUCTANT TO ACCOMPANY CÆSAR TO BRITAIN

Erat ūnā cum cēterīs[1] Dumnorīx Aeduus, dē quō ante ā nōbīs dictum est. Hunc sēcum habēre in prīmīs cōnstituerat, quod eum cupidum rērum novārum, cupidum imperī, magnī animī, magnae inter Gallōs auctōritātis cognōverat. Accēdēbat hūc[2] quod[3] in conciliō Aeduōrum Dumnorīx dīxerat sibi ā Caesare rēgnum cīvitātis dēferrī; quod dictum[4] Aeduī graviter ferēbant neque recūsandī aut dēprecandī causā lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittere audēbant. Id factum ex suīs hospitibus Caesar cognōverat. Ille omnibus prīmō precibus petere contendit ut in Galliā relinquerētur, partim[5] quod īnsuētus **nāvigandī mare** timēret, partim quod religiōnibus impedīrī sēsē dīceret. Posteāquam[6] id obstinātē[7] sibi negārī vīdit, omnī spē impetrandī **adēmptā** prīncipēs Galliae sollicitāre, sēvocāre singulōs hortārīque coepit utī in continentī remanērent; metū territāre[8]: Nōn sine causā fierī ut Gallia omnī nōbilitāte spoliārētur; id esse cōnsilium Caesaris, ut quōs[9] in cōnspectū Galliae interficere verērētur, hōs omnīs in Britanniam trāductōs necāret[10]; fidem reliquīs interpōnere,[11] iūs iūrandum poscere, ut quod esse ex ūsū[12] Galliae intellēxissent commūnī cōnsiliō administrārent. Haec ā complūribus ad Caesarem dēferēbantur. — DE BELLO GALLICO, V, 6

VOCABULARY

dēprecor, 1, *beg off*	**sollicitō**, 1, *stir up*
īnsuētus, a, um, *unaccustomed*	**sēvocō**, 1, *call aside*
religiō, ōnis, f., *scruple*	**territō**, 1, *terrify*
negō, 1, *refuse*	**spoliō**, 1, *plunder*

NOTES

[1] cēterīs: synonym of reliquī, referring to those who were going with Cæsar.   [2] hūc: *to this*.   [3] quod: *the fact that*.   [4] dictum: a noun, referring to sibi . . . dēferrī.   [5] partim: adverb from pars.   [6] posteā- quam: = postquam.   [7] obstinātē: observe the termination. English de- rivative?   [8] territāre: depends on coepit. It implies an idea of *saying*, on which fierī and esse depend.   [9] quōs: the antecedent is hōs. [10] necāret: synonym of interficiō.   [11] interpōnere: *to pledge*. It depends on coepit.   [12] ex ūsū: *of advantage*.

Observe the force of the prefix in *dē*ferrī, *īn*suētus, *sē*vocāre, *inter*pōnere.

EXERCISE LXXXII

Grammar: A. 346, *a*, 3; 367; 496. B. 187, II, *a*; 201, 2; 337, 2, *a*, *f*. G. 369; 346; 665; 666. H. 442; 426, 1; 638, 1.

Inflection: coepī; cōnsilium; līber.

Order of words: the modifiers of a word precede or follow it, accord- ing as they are, or are not, emphatic.

DURING THE EMBARKATION DUMNORIX ATTEMPTS TO ESCAPE, BUT IS OVERTAKEN AND PUT TO DEATH

Quā rē[1] cognitā Caesar, quod tantum cīvitātī Aeduae dignitātis[2] tribuēbat, coercendum[3] atque dēterrendum quibuscumque rēbus posset Dumnorīgem statuēbat; quod longius eius āmentiam prō- gredī vidēbat, prōspiciendum nē quid[4] sibi ac reī pūblicae **nocēre** posset. Itaque diēs circiter vīgintī quīnque in eō locō commorātus,[5] quod Cōrus[6] **ventus nāvigātiōnem** impediēbat, quī magnam partem omnis temporis in hīs locīs flāre cōnsuēvit, dabat operam[7] ut in officiō Dumnorīgem continēret, nihilō tamen sētius omnia eius cōnsilia cognōsceret; tandem idōneam nactus[8] **tempestātem** mīlitēs equitēsque **cōnscendere** nāvīs iubet. At omnium impedītīs animīs Dumnorīx cum equitibus Aeduōrum ā castrīs īnsciente[9] Caesare domum discēdere coepit. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar, intermissā prō- fectiōne atque omnibus rēbus postpositīs, magnam partem equitātūs ad eum īnsequendum mittit retrahīque imperat; sī vim faciat neque

pāreat, interficī iubet, nihil[10] hunc sē absente prō[11] sānō factūrum
arbitrātus,[12] quī[13] praesentis imperium neglēxisset. Ille autem revo-
cātus resistere ac sē manū dēfendere suōrumque fidem implōrāre
coepit, saepe clāmitāns līberum sē līberaeque esse cīvitātis. Illī, ut
erat imperātum, circumsistunt hominem atque interficiunt; at
equitēs Aeduī ad Caesarem omnēs revertuntur.

<div align="right">DE BELLO GALLICO, V, 7</div>

VOCABULARY

tribuō, 3, uī, ūtus, *grant*

coerceō, 2, uī, itus, *check*

āmentia, ae, f., *madness*

prōspiciō, 3, spexī, spectus, *look out*

flō, 1, *blow*

sētius, *less*

retrahō, 3, trāxī, trāctus, *bring
back*

pāreō, 2, uī, ——, *obey*

sānus, a, um, *sane*

revocō, 1, *recall*

clāmitō, 1, *shout*

NOTES

[1] quā rē: the facts mentioned in the last chapter.   [2] dignitātis: with
tantum. English derivative?   [3] coercendum: understand esse, depending
on statuēbat.   [4] quid: *in any way.*   [5] commorātus: synonym of moror.
[6] Cōrus: the northwest wind.   [7] dabat operam: *he exerted himself.*   [8] nac-
tus: *having met.*   [9] īnsciente: in + sciēns.   [10] nihil: object.   [11] prō: *like.*
[12] arbitrātus: synonym of exīstimō.   [13] quī: equivalent to cum causal.

Think of English words from tribuēbat, dēterrendum, prōspiciendum,
revocātus, revertuntur, and observe the connection in meaning between
the Latin word and the English derivative.

Cæsar sets sail at sunset and with the enthusiastic help of sailors and
soldiers reaches Britain the next day about noon. He lands without mis-
hap. Learning the location of the enemy, he sets out at once for them,
but has no decisive engagement.

NAVIGIUM

EXERCISE LXXXIII

Grammar: A. 346, *a*, 3 : 531, 2 ; 540. 2. B. 201, 2 : 282, 2 ; 286, 1.
G. 369 ; 630 ; 541. H. 442 ; 590 : 588, II.

Inflection: nūntiō ; diēs : superus (compare).

Order of words: temporal clauses usually precede, clauses of purpose
and result usually follow, the verb on which they depend.

A STORM CAUSES A DISASTER TO THE FLEET

Postrīdiē eius diēī[1] māne tripartītō mīlitēs equitēsque in expedī-
tiōnem[2] mīsit, ut eōs quī fūgerant persequerentur.[3] Hīs aliquantum
itineris prōgressīs, cum iam extrēmī essent in prōspectū, equitēs ā
Quīntō Ātriō ad Caesarem vēnērunt, quī nūntiārent superiōre nocte
maximā **coortā tempestāte** prope omnīs nāvīs afflīctās atque in **lītus**
ēiectās esse, quod neque **ancorae fūnēs**que sustinērent neque **nautae
gubernātōrēs**que vim tempestātis patī possent ; itaque ex eō concursū
nāvium magnum esse incommodum[4] acceptum.

<div align="right">DE BELLO GALLICO, V, 10</div>

VOCABULARY

māne, *early*

tripartītō, *in three divisions*

aliquantum, ī, n., *a little*

prōspectus, ūs, m., *view*

ēiciō, 3, iēcī, iectus, *throw out*

NOTES

[1] eius diēī : i.e. on which his soldiers had put the enemy to flight.
[2] expedītiōnem : expediō + tiō ; *raid*.   [3] persequerentur : composition ?
[4] incommodum : the prefix has a negative force.

EXERCISE LXXXIV

Grammar: A. 345 ; 382, 1 ; 504. B. 203, 1 ; 191, 1 ; 338, 1, *a.* G. 365 ; 356 ; 428. H. 440, 3 ; 433 : 626.

Inflection: mūniō ; maior ; īdem.

Order of words: modifiers of either word of an ablative absolute often are placed between these words, the particular arrangement depending on the emphasis.

CÆSAR PROCURES WORKMEN, REPAIRS THE DAMAGE, AND STARTS AGAIN

Hīs rēbus[1] cognitīs Caesar legiōnēs equitātumque revocārī atque in itinere resistere iubet, ipse ad nāvīs revertitur ; eadem ferē[2] quae ex nūntiīs litterīsque cognōverat cōram perspicit,[3] sīc ut āmissīs circiter quadrāgintā nāvibus reliquae tamen **reficī** posse magnō negōtiō[4] vidērentur. Itaque ex legiōnibus fabrōs dēligit et ex continentī aliōs arcessī iubet ; Labiēnō scrībit[5] ut[6] quam plūrimās possit iīs legiōnibus quae sint apud eum nāvīs īnstituat. Ipse, etsī rēs erat multae operae[7] ac labōris, tamen commodissimum esse statuit omnīs nāvīs subdūcī et cum castrīs ūnā mūnītiōne coniungī.[8] In hīs rēbus circiter diēs decem cōnsūmit nē nocturnīs[9] quidem temporibus ad labōrem mīlitum intermissīs. Subductīs nāvibus castrīsque ēgregiē mūnītīs eāsdem cōpiās quās ante praesidiō nāvibus relinquit ; ipse eōdem unde redierat proficīscitur. Eō cum vēnisset, maiōrēs iam undique in eum locum cōpiae Britannōrum convēnerant summā[10] imperī bellīque administrandī commūnī cōnsiliō permissā Cassivellaunō, cuius fīnīs ā maritimīs[11] cīvitātibus flūmen dīvidit, quod appellātur Tamesis,[12] ā **marī** circiter mīlia passuum octōgintā. Huic[13] superiōre tempore cum reliquīs cīvitātibus continentia bella intercesserant ; sed nostrō adventū permōtī Britannī hunc tōtī bellō imperiōque praefēcerant. — DE BELLO GALLICO, V, 11

VOCABULARY

revocō, 1, *recall*   **faber, brī**, m., *workman*

NOTES

[1] **hīs rēbus:** i.e. the disaster to the fleet.   [2] **ferē:** an adverb is usually placed next to the word which it modifies.   [3] **perspicit:** compare with **dēspiciō** and **cōnspiciō**.   [4] **negōtiō:** shows the manner of **reficī**.   [5] **scrībit:** implies an order.   [6] **ut:** introduces **īnstituat**.   [7] **operae:** = **difficultās**.   [8] **omnīs . . . coniungī:** forms the subject of **esse**.   [9] **nocturnīs:** nox + urnus, *pertaining to*.   [10] **summā:** a noun.   [11] **maritimīs:** mare + timus, *pertaining to*.   [12] **Tamesis:** *the Thames*.   [13] **huic:** i.e. Cassivellaunus, one of the great heroes of ancient Britain.

EXERCISE LXXXV

Grammar: A. 283; 284; 414; 418. B. 167; 168; 223; 226. G. 205; 211; 403; 397. H. 393; 479; 480.

Inflection: appellō (3); īnsula; ūnus.

Order of words: the modifiers of the predicate are usually arranged, from the beginning, in the order of their importance.

THE SIZE AND SHAPE OF THE BRITISH ISLANDS

Īnsula[1] nātūrā triquetra, cuius ūnum latus est contrā[2] Galliam. Huius lateris alter angulus, quī est ad Cantium,[3] quō ferē omnēs ex Galliā nāvēs **appelluntur,** ad orientem sōlem, īnferior ad merīdiem[4] spectat. Hoc latus tenet[5] circiter mīlia passuum quīngenta. Alterum vergit ad Hispāniam atque occidentem sōlem; quā ex[6] parte est Hibernia īnsula, dīmidiō minor, ut exīstimātur, quam Britannia, sed parī spatiō trānsmissūs atque[7] ex Galliā est in Britanniam. In hōc mediō cursū est īnsula, quae appellātur Mona; complūrēs praetereā minōrēs obiectae īnsulae exīstimantur, dē quibus īnsulīs nōn nūllī scrīpsērunt diēs continuōs trīgintā sub[8] brūmam esse noctem. Nōs nihil dē eō percontātiōnibus reperiēbāmus, nisi certīs ex **aquā**[9] mēnsūrīs breviōrēs esse quam in continentī noctīs vidēbāmus. Huius est longitūdō[10] lateris, ut fert illōrum opīniō, **septingentōrum** mīlium. Tertium est contrā septentriōnēs, cui partī nūlla est obiecta terra; sed eius angulus alter

maximē ad Germāniam spectat. Hoc mīlium passuum **octingentōrum** in longitūdinem esse exīstimātur. Ita omnis īnsula est in circuitū vīciēs centum mīlium passuum. — DE BELLO GALLICO, V, 13

VOCABULARY

triquetrus, a, um, *triangular*

angulus, ī, m., *angle, corner*

dīmidium, dīmi'dī, n., *half*

trānsmissus, ūs, m., *crossing*

scrībō, 3, scrīpsī, scrīptus, *write*

brūma, ae, f., *winter solstice* (lit. *shortest*)

percontātiō, ōnis, f., *inquiry*

mēnsūra, ae, f., *measurement*

vīciēs, *twenty times*

NOTES

[1] īnsula: understand the verb.   [2] contrā: *opposite.*   [3] Cantium: *Kent.*
[4] ad merīdiem: is this true? Merīdiem = medius + diēs.   [5] tenet: *extends.*
[6] ex: *on.*   [7] atque: *as.*   [8] sub: *about.*   [9] ex aquā: i.e. by means of the water-clock.   [10] longitūdō: composition?

Think of English words from orientem, sōlem, occidentem, obiectae, spectat, centum, and observe the connection in meaning between the Latin word and the English derivative.

EXERCISE LXXXVI

Grammar: A. 415; 418. B. 224; 226. G. 400; 397. H. 473, 2; 480.
Inflection: efficiō ; lac ; multum (compare).

Order of words: a preposition is usually placed immediately before the word which it governs.

SOME OF THE CUSTOMS OF THE BRITONS

Ex hīs[1] omnibus longē sunt hūmānissimī[2] quī Cantium incolunt, quae regiō est maritima omnis, neque multum ā Gallicā differunt cōnsuētūdine. Interiōrēs[3] plērīque frūmenta nōn serunt, sed **lacte** et **carne** vīvunt pellibusque sunt vestītī. Omnēs vērō sē Britannī vitrō īnficiunt, quod caeruleum efficit colōrem,[4] atque hōc[5] horribiliōrēs[6] sunt in pugnā aspectū[7] ; capillōque sunt prōmissō atque omnī parte corporis rāsā praeter caput et labrum superius.

DE BELLO GALLICO, V, 14

VOCABULARY

serō, 3, sēvī, satus, *sow*

vīvō, 3, vīxī, vīctum, *live*

vestiō, 4, īvī, ītus, *clothe*

vitrum, ī, n., *woad*, a blue dye

īnficiō, 3, fēcī, fectus, *stain*

caeruleus, a, um, *blue*

capillus, ī, m., *hair*

prōmittō, 3, mīsī, missus, *let grow*

rāsus, a, um, *shaved*

labrum, ī, n., *lip*

NOTES

[1] hīs: i.e. Britannī.   [2] hūmānissimī: homō + ānus, *pertaining to*.
[3] interiōrēs: English derivative? Understand hominēs.   [4] colōrem: English derivative?   [5] hōc: states a cause.   [6] horribiliōrēs: English derivative from the positive?   [7] aspectū: compare cōnspectus, noting the prefix.

EXERCISE LXXXVII

Grammar: A. 345. *a*; 414; 429, 1. B. 203, 1; 223; 228, 1, *b*. G. 365; 403; 385, N. 1. H. 440, 3; 479; 485, 2.

Inflection: eō; genus; alter.

Order of words: a genitive, unless emphatic, usually follows the noun which it limits.

CÆSAR CROSSES THE THAMES IN SPITE OF THE ENEMY'S RESISTANCE

Caesar cognitō cōnsiliō[1] eōrum[2] ad flūmen Tamesim in fīnīs Cassivellaunī[3] exercitum dūxit; quod flūmen ūnō omnīnō locō pedibus, atque hōc aegrē, trānsīrī potest.[4] Eō cum vēnisset, animadvertit ad alteram flūminis rīpam magnās esse cōpiās hostium īnstrūctās. Rīpa autem erat acūtīs sudibus praefīxīsque mūnīta, eiusdemque generis sub **aquā dēfīxae** sudēs flūmine tegēbantur. Hīs rēbus cognitīs ā captīvīs perfugīsque Caesar praemissō equitātū cōnfestim legiōnēs subsequī iussit. Sed eā[5] celeritāte atque eō impetū mīlitēs iērunt, cum[6] capite sōlō ex aquā exstārent, ut hostēs impetum legiōnum atque equitum sustinēre nōn possent rīpāsque dīmitterent ac sē fugae mandārent. — DE BELLO GALLICO, V, 18

VOCABULARY

sudis, is, f., *stake*

praefīgō, 3, fīxī, fīxus, *set up in front*

tegō, 3, tēxī, tēctus, *cover*

perfuga, ae, m., *deserter*

exstō, 1, ——, ——, *stand out*

NOTES

[1] cōnsiliō: i.e. of fighting.   [2] eōrum: the Britons.   [3] Cassivellaunī: one of the greatest of the ancient heroes of Britain.   [4] flūmen . . . potest: not true; Caesar *found* but one.   [5] eā: = tantā here.   [6] cum: conjunction. Considering the phrase capite sōlō with eā celeritāte iērunt, what force must cum have?

Determine the force of the prefix in *prae*fīxīs, *dē*fīxae, *sub*sequī, *ex*stārent, *dī*mitterent.

Cassivellaunus continues the warfare by attacking the Romans' foraging parties, and thus keeping them from going far from the camp in the search for supplies.

EXERCISE LXXXVIII

Grammar: A. 305; 563. B. 250, 1: 295, 1. G. 614; 546. H. 396; 565.

Inflection: dēfendō; celeriter (compare); ipse.

Order of words: an adverb is usually placed immediately before the word which it limits.

THE TRINOVANTES SURRENDER TO CÆSAR

Interim Trinovantēs, prope firmissima eārum regiōnum cīvitās, ex quā Mandubracius adulēscēns Caesaris fidem secūtus ad eum in continentem vēnerat, cuius pater in eā cīvitāte rēgnum obtinuerat interfectusque erat ā Cassivellaunō, ipse[1] fugā mortem vītāverat, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt pollicenturque sēsē eī dēditūrōs atque imperāta factūrōs; petunt ut Mandubracium ab iniūriā Cassivellaunī dēfendat atque in cīvitātem mittat, quī[2] praesit imperiumque obtineat. Hīs Caesar imperat obsidēs quadrāgintā frūmentumque exercituī, Mandubraciumque ad eōs mittit.[3] Illī imperāta celeriter fēcērunt, obsidēs ad numerum frūmentumque mīsērunt.

<div align="right">DE BELLO GALLICO, V, 20</div>

VOCABULARY

continēns, entis, f., *continent*   vītō, 1, *avoid*

NOTES

[1] ipse: Mandubracius.   [2] quī, etc.: states the purpose of **mittat**.
[3] **Mandubracium . . . mittit**: by this means he gained their good will.

EXERCISE LXXXIX

Grammar: A. 346, *a*, 3; 420, 1, 2; 556. B. 201, 2; 337, 2, *a*, *f*; 293, 1. G. 369; 665; 666. H. 442; 638, 1; 604, 1.

Inflection: obses; nōbilis; hīc.

Order of words: dependent clauses, except those of purpose and result, tend to precede the main verb.

AFTER A LAST DESPERATE ATTEMPT TO DEFEAT THE ROMANS CASSIVELLAUNUS SURRENDERS TO CÆSAR

Dum haec[1] in hīs locīs geruntur, Cassivellaunus ad Cantium,[2] quod esse ad[3] mare suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, quibus regiōnibus[4] quattuor rēgēs praeerant, Cingetorīx, Carvilius, Taximagulus, Segovax, nūntiōs mittit atque hīs imperat utī coāctīs omnibus cōpiīs castra nāvālia dē imprōvīsō adoriantur atque oppugnent. Hī cum ad castra vēnissent, nostrī ēruptiōne factā, multīs eōrum interfectīs, captō etiam nōbilī duce Lugotorīge, suōs incolumīs redūxērunt. Cassivellaunus hōc proeliō nūntiātō, tot dētrīmentīs acceptīs, vāstātīs fīnibus, maximē etiam permōtus dēfectiōne cīvitātum[5] lēgātōs per Atrebātem Commium dē dēditiōne ad Caesarem mittit. Caesar cum cōnstituisset[6] hiemāre in continentī propter repentīnōs Galliae **mōtūs,** neque multum aestātis superesset, atque id facile extrahī posse intellegeret, obsidēs imperat et quid in annōs singulōs vectīgālis[7] populō Rōmānō Britannia penderet cōnstituit; interdīcit atque imperat Cassivellaunō nē Mandubraciō neu Trinovantibus **noceat.**

DE BELLO GALLICO, V, 22

VOCABULARY

nāvālis, e, *naval*

dēfectiō, ōnis, f., *revolt*

extrahō, 3, trāxī, trāctus, *draw out*

vectīgal, ālis, n., *tribute*

interdīcō, 3, dīxī, dictus, *forbid*

NOTES

[1] **haec**: i. e. the capture of the chief town of Cassivellaunus. [2] **Cantium**: *Kent*. [3] **ad**: *near*. [4] **regiōnibus**: for the case, consider **praeerant**. [5] **cīvitātum**: five had surrendered to Cæsar. [6] **cōnstituisset**: states a reason for **imperat**. [7] **vectīgālis**: with **quid**.

Observe the words in the passage ending in **tiō**. What is the force of this suffix?

Cæsar then returns with his fleet safely to Gaul.

EXERCISE XC

Grammar: A. 403, *a*; 410. B. 215; 218, 1. G. 395; 407. H. 469, 2; 477.

Inflection: fīō ; plūs.

Order of words: the beginning of the clause or sentence is usually the emphatic position.

CÆSAR LEARNS OF THE MURDER OF TASGETIUS

Erat in Carnutibus summō locō[1] nātus Tasgetius, cuius maiōrēs in suā cīvitāte rēgnum obtinuerant. Huic Caesar prō eius virtūte atque in sē benevolentiā,[2] quod in omnibus bellīs singulārī[3] eius operā[4] fuerat[5] ūsus, maiōrum locum restituerat. Tertium iam hunc[6] annum rēgnantem[7] inimīcī[8] palam multīs ex cīvitāte auctōribus[9] interfēcērunt. Dēfertur ea rēs ad Caesarem. Ille veritus, quod ad plūrīs pertinēbat,[10] nē cīvitās eōrum impulsū dēficeret, Lūcium Plancum cum legiōne ex Belgiō celeriter in Carnutēs proficīscī iubet ibique hiemāre, quōrumque[11] operā[12] cognōverit Tasgetium interfectum, hōs comprehēnsōs ad sē mittere. Interim ab omnibus quibus legiōnēs trādiderat certior factus est in hīberna perventum locumque hībernīs esse mūnītum. — DE BELLO GALLICO, V, 25

VOCABULARY

palam, *openly*

impulsus, ūs, m., *instigation*

comprehendō, 3, hendī, hēnsus, *seize*

NOTES

[1] locō: *rank*.   [2] benevolentiā: bene + volō + tia.   [3] singulārī: English derivative?   [4] operā: synonym of opus.   [5] fuerat: translate as erat.   [6] hunc: refers to Tasgetius.   [7] rēgnantem: synonym of regō.   [8] inimīcī: in + amīcus.   [9] auctōribus: augeō + tor, *instigators*.   [10] ad plūrīs pertinēbat: i.e. several persons were concerned in it. Note multīs auctōribus above.   [11] quōrum: the antecedent is hōs.   [12] operā: with interfectum.

Ambiorix, one of the chiefs of the Eburones, incites a serious revolt among several of the Gallic tribes, the Nervii among others. The winter quarters of Cicero, the commander of Cæsar's forces in this tribe, are besieged, and the situation is critical. Cicero gets a letter through the enemy's lines to Cæsar, and the latter at once marches to his relief with what troops he can gather.

EXERCISE XCI

Grammar: A. 345; 376; 531, 2. B. 203, 1; 188, 1; 282, 2. G. 365; 352; 630. H. 440, 3; 425, 2.

Inflection: cōnfīrmō; mīlle; certior.

Order of words: a variation from the usual position of a word makes the word emphatic.

LEARNING OF THE GAULS' ADVANCE, CÆSAR PURPOSELY BUILDS A VERY SMALL CAMP TO LURE THEM ON

Gallī rē cognitā[1] per explōrātōrēs **obsidiōnem** relinquunt, ad Caesarem omnibus cōpiīs contendunt. Haec[2] erant armāta circiter mīlia sexāgintā. Cicerō datā facultāte Gallum[3] ab eōdem Verticōne quem suprā dēmōnstrāvimus repetit,[4] quī litterās ad Caesarem dēferat. Hunc admonet[5] iter cautē[6] dīligenterque faciat.[7] Perscrībit in litterīs hostīs ab sē discessisse omnemque ad eum multitūdinem convertisse. Quibus litterīs circiter mediā nocte Caesar adlātīs suōs

facit certiōrēs eōsque ad dīmicandum animō cōnfirmat. Posterō diē
lūce prīmā movet castra, et circiter mīlia passuum quattuor prō-
gressus trāns **vallem** et rīvum multitūdinem hostium cōnspicātur.
Erat magnī perīculī rēs tantulīs cōpiīs inīquō[8] locō dīmicāre[9]; tum,
quoniam obsidiōne līberātum[10] Cicerōnem sciēbat, aequō animō
remittendum dē celeritāte[11] exīstimābat. Cōnsīdit et quam aequis-
simō potest locō castra commūnit[12]; atque haec etsī erant exigua[13]
per sē, vix hominum mīlium **septem,** praesertim nūllīs cum impedī-
mentīs, tamen angustiīs viārum[14] quam maximē potest contrahit eō
cōnsiliō, ut in summam contemptiōnem[15] hostibus veniat. Interim
speculātōribus in omnīs partīs dīmissīs explōrat quō[16] commodissimē
itinere vallem trānsīre possit. — DE BELLO GALLICO, V, 49

VOCABULARY

perscrībō, 3, scrīpsī, scrīptus,
  write in full
rīvus, ī, m., *stream*

tantulus, a, um, *so little*
speculātor, ōris, m., *spy*

NOTES

[1] **rē cognitā**: i.e. the fact that Cæsar was coming to the relief of Cicero.
[2] **haec**: refers to **cōpiīs**, but takes the gender of **mīlia**. [3] **Gallum**: a slave
of Vertico, a Nervian. He had helped Cicero before. [4] **repetit**: compo-
sition? [5] **admonet**: = **monet**. [6] **cautē**: adverb from the participle of
caveō. [7] **faciat**: shows purpose. [8] **inīquō**: in + aequus. [9] **dīmicāre**:
used as a noun. [10] **līberātum**: verb formed from **līber**. Understand **esse**.
[11] **remittendum dē celeritāte**: *he might relax his speed*. [12] **commūnit**: the
prefix is intensive. [13] **exigua**: synonym of **parvus**. [14] **angustiīs
viārum**: *by narrowing the streets*. [15] **contemptiōnem**: English derivative?
[16] **quō**: interrogative.

Explain the derivation of **explōrātōrēs, multitūdinem, celeritāte**. What is
the stem of **speculātōribus**, and what is its meaning?

EXERCISE XCII

Grammar: A. 423, 1; 507, 3. B. 230; 338, 4, *b*; 339, 1. G. 393;
433. H. 486; 631.

Inflection: recipiō ; equester ; uterque.

Order of words: prepositional phrases usually limit a word which
follows them.

BOTH ARMIES AVOID A DECISIVE BATTLE

Eō diē parvulīs[1] equestribus proeliīs ad **aquam** factīs utrīque sēsē
suō locō[2] continent, — Gallī,[3] quod ampliōrēs cōpiās, quae nōndum
convēnerant, exspectābant ; Caesar, sī forte timōris simulātiōne
hostīs in suum locum ēlicere posset, ut citrā **vallem** prō castrīs
proeliō contenderet[4]; sī id efficere nōn posset, ut explōrātīs
itineribus minōre cum perīculō vallem rīvumque trānsīret. Prīmā
lūce hostium equitātus ad castra accēdit proeliumque cum nostrīs
equitibus committit. Caesar cōnsultō equitēs cēdere sēque in castra
recipere iubet; simul ex omnibus partibus castra altiōre vāllō mūnīrī
portāsque obstruī atque in hīs administrandīs rēbus quam maximē
concursārī[5] et cum simulātiōne agī timōris iubet.

<div align="right">DE BELLO GALLICO, V, 50</div>

VOCABULARY

forte, *by chance*

ēliciō, 3, uī, itus, *entice*

citrā, *this side of*

rīvus, ī, m., *stream*

obstruō, 3, strūxī, strūctus,
  block up

concursō, 1, *run to and fro*

NOTES

[1] parvulīs: parvus + ulus, *little*. Compare tantulus.   [2] locō: without *in*,
as often.   [3] Gallī: understand sēsē suō locō continent.   [4] contenderet:
states the purpose of sēsē suō locō continet understood.   [5] concursārī:
impersonal.

Observe how the phrases in the passage illustrate the rule for the order
of words.

EXERCISE XCIII

Grammar: A. 401; 420, 1, 2. B. 214, 1, *b*; 227, 2, *a*, *b*. G. 405; 410. H. 462; 489, 1.

Inflection: volō; manus; quis.

Order of words: adjectives of quantity usually precede the word which they modify.

AFTER LURING THE GAULS ON TO THE ATTACK CÆSAR PUNISHES THEM SOUNDLY

Quibus omnibus rēbus[1] hostēs invītātī cōpiās trādūcunt aciemque inīquō[2] locō cōnstituunt, nostrīs vērō etiam dē vāllō dēductīs propius accēdunt et tēla intrā mūnītiōnem ex omnibus partibus coniciunt, praecōnibusque circummissīs[3] **prōnūntiārī** iubent, seu quis Gallus seu Rōmānus velit ante hōram tertiam ad sē trānsīre, sine perīculō licēre; post id tempus nōn fore potestātem.[4] Ac sīc nostrōs contempsērunt ut obstrūctīs[5] in speciem[6] portīs singulīs ōrdinibus caespitum, quod eā nōn posse intrōrumpere vidēbantur, aliī vāllum manū scindere, aliī fossās complēre inciperent. Tum Caesar omnibus portīs ēruptiōne factā equitātūque ēmissō[7] celeriter hostīs in fugam dat, sīc utī omnīnō pugnandī causā resisteret nēmō, magnumque ex iīs numerum occīdit atque omnīs armīs exuit.

DE BELLO GALLICO, V, 51

VOCABULARY

praecō, ōnis, m., *herald*

contemnō, 3, tempsī, temptus, *despise*

caespes, itis, m., *sod*

intrōrumpō, 3, rūpī, ruptus, *break into*

scindō, 3, scidī, scissus, *tear down*

exuō, 3, uī, ūtus, *strip*

NOTES

[1] quibus rēbus: i. e. those mentioned in the preceding chapter.   [2] inīquō: in + aequus.   [3] circummissīs: composition?   [4] potestātem: *permission*.   [5] obstrūctīs: participle from obstruō. English derivative?   [6] in speciem: *for the sake of appearance.*   [7] ēmissō: composition?

EXERCISE XCIV

Inflection: vereor; diēs.

Order of words: in a phrase or sentence the emphatic word usually stands first.

CÆSAR PRAISES CICERO FOR HIS BRAVE DEFENSE

Longius prōsequī veritus,[1] quod silvae palūdēsque intercēdēbant, omnibus suīs incolumibus eōdem diē ad Cicerōnem pervenit. Īnstitūtās turrīs, testūdinēs, mūnītiōnēsque hostium admīrātur; prōductā legiōne cognōscit nōn decimum quemque[2] esse reliquum mīlitem sine vulnere; ex hīs omnibus iūdicat rēbus quantō cum perīculō et quantā virtūte rēs sint administrātae. Cicerōnem prō eius meritō legiōnemque conlaudat; centuriōnēs singillātim tribūnōsque mīlitum appellat, quōrum ēgregiam fuisse virtūtem testimōniō Cicerōnis cognōverat. Dē cāsū Sabīnī et Cottae[3] certius ex captīvīs cognōscit. Posterō diē cōntiōne habitā rem gestam prōpōnit, mīlitēs cōnsōlātur et cōnfīrmat. Interim ad Labiēnum[4] per Rēmōs incrēdibilī celeritāte dē victōriā Caesaris fāma perfertur, ut, cum[5] ab hībernīs Cicerōnis mīlia passuum abesset circiter sexāgintā eōque post hōram nōnam diēī Caesar pervēnisset, ante mediam noctem ad portās castrōrum clāmor orerētur, quō clāmōre significātiō[6] victōriae grātulātiōque[7] ab Rēmīs Labiēnō fieret. — DE BELLO GALLICO, V, 52

VOCABULARY

conlaudō, 1, *praise highly*	cōntiō, ōnis, f., *assembly*
singillātim, *one at a time*	cōnsōlor, 1, *speak kindly to*
testimōnium, testimōnī, n., *evidence*	fāma, ae, f., *report*

NOTES

[1] **veritus:** i.e. Cæsar.   [2] **decimum quemque:** *one in ten*.   [3] **Sabīnī et Cottae:** treacherously killed by Ambiorix, after their forces had been ambushed.   [4] **Labiēnum:** he was wintering among the Remi.   [5] **cum:** considering the short time between **hōram nōnam** and **mediam noctem** and the long distance traversed, what must **cum** mean?   [6] **significātiō;** signum + faciō + tiō.   [7] **grātulātiō:** from **grātulor,** *congratulate.*

EXERCISE XCV

Inflection: maneō; initium.

Order of words: when a noun is modified by an adjective and a geni-
tive, the order often is: adjective, genitive, noun — the particular arrange-
ment depending on emphasis.

THE WIDELY FELT DESIRE AMONG THE GAULS FOR A REVOLT KEEPS CÆSAR UNEASY

Hāc fāmā[1] ad Trēverōs perlātā Indūtiomārus, quī posterō diē
castra Labiēnī oppugnāre dēcrēverat,[2] noctū profugit cōpiāsque
omnīs in Trēverōs redūcit. Caesar Fabium[3] cum suā legiōne re-
mittit in hīberna, ipse cum tribus legiōnibus circum Samarobrīvam[4]
trīnīs[5] hībernīs hiemāre cōnstituit; et quod tantī **mōtūs** Galliae
exstiterant, tōtam **hiemem** ipse ad exercitum manēre dēcrēvit. Nam
illō incommodō[6] dē Sabīnī morte perlātō omnēs ferē Galliae cīvitātēs
dē bellō cōnsultābant, nūntiōs lēgātiōnēsque in omnīs partīs dīmit-
tēbant, et quid reliquī cōnsilī caperent atque unde initium bellī
fieret explōrābant,[7] nocturnaque[8] in locīs dēsertīs concilia habēbant.
Neque ūllum ferē tōtīus hiemis tempus sine sollicitūdine Caesaris
intercessit, quīn[9] aliquem dē cōnsiliīs ac mōtū Gallōrum nūntium
acciperet. In hīs ab Lūciō Rōsciō, quem legiōnī tertiae decimae
praefēcerat, certior factus est magnās Gallōrum cōpiās eārum
cīvitātum quae Aremoricae appellantur oppugnandī suī causā con-
vēnisse, neque longius mīlibus passuum octō ab hībernīs suīs
āfuisse, sed nūntiō adlātō dē victōriā Caesaris discessisse, adeō ut
fugae similis[10] discessus[11] vidērētur. At Caesar prīncipibus cuiusque
cīvitātis ad sē **ēvocātīs** aliōs territandō,[12] cum sē scīre quae fierent
dēnūntiāret,[13] aliōs cohortandō magnam partem Galliae in officiō
tenuit. — DE BELLO GALLICO, V, 53, 54

VOCABULARY

exsistō, 3, stitī, ——, *arise*

cōnsultō, 1, *deliberate earnestly*

sollicitūdō, inis, f., *anxiety*

adeō, *to such a degree, so*

NOTES

[1] **fāmā**: i. e. about Cæsar's success.   [2] **dēcrēverat**: synonym of **cōnstituō**.
[3] **Fabium**: in charge of the winter quarters among the Morini.   [4] **Sama-robrīvam**: a town of the Ambiani.   [5] **trīnīs**: used for **tribus** with **hībernīs**, a noun used only in the plural.   [6] **incommodō**: **in** + **commodum**.   [7] **explō-rābant**: compare with the noun **explōrātor**.   [8] **nocturna**: **nox** + **urnus**, a time suffix.   [9] **quīn**: *without*.   [10] **similis**: English derivative?   [11] **discessus**: noun from **discēdō**.   [12] **territandō**: *by frightening*.   [13] **dēnūntiāret**: composition?

Observè the force of the prefix in *per*lātā, *re*dūcit, *ex*stiterant, *dī*mittē-bant, *prae*fēcerat, *ā*fuisse.

With the exception of the Aedui and the Remi, whom Cæsar had always especially honored, there is hardly a state that he does not suspect of considering a revolt.

EXERCISE XCVI

Order of words: in general a phrase or limiting expression is more likely to limit or depend on a word closely following it than on one that has gone before. This is because the limiting word is usually the emphatic part of the phrase.

INDUTIOMARUS TRIES TO ROUSE THE GERMANS AND THE GAULS

Trēverī vērō atque Indūtiomārus tōtīus **hiemis** nūllum tempus intermīsērunt quīn[1] trāns Rhēnum lēgātōs mitterent, cīvitātēs sollici-tārent, pecūniās pollicērentur, magnā parte exercitūs nostrī interfectā multō minōrem superesse dīcerent partem. Neque tamen ūllī cīvi-tātī Germānōrum persuādērī potuit ut Rhēnum trānsīret, cum sē **bis** expertōs dīcerent, Ariovistī bellō et Tencterōrum trānsitū[2]; nōn esse amplius fortūnam temptātūrōs. Hāc spē lāpsus Indūtiomārus nihilō minus cōpiās cōgere, exercēre, ā fīnitimīs equōs parāre, exsulēs damnātōsque tōtā Galliā magnīs praemiīs ad sē allicere coepit. Ac tantam sibi iam hīs rēbus in Galliā auctōritātem comparāverat ut undique ad eum lēgātiōnēs concurrerent, grātiam[3] atque amīcitiam pūblicē prīvātimque[4] peterent. — De Bello Gallico, V, 55

VOCABULARY

sollicitō, 1, *stir up*

pecūnia, ae, f., *money*

lābor, 3, lāpsus, *slip*

exerceō, 2, uī, itus, *train*

exsul, ulis, m., f., *exile*

damnō, 1, *convict*

alliciō, 3, lexī, lectus, *attract*

NOTES

[1] quīn: *without*.   [2] trānsitū: a verbal noun from trānseō.   [3] grātiam: i.e. of Indutiomarus.   [4] prīvātim: compare with nōminātim, singillātim.

Select from the passage words that by their position illustrate the rule for the order of words.

EXERCISE XCVII

Order of words: an adverb usually precedes the word which it modifies.

SEVERAL STATES REBEL AGAINST THE ROMANS

Interfectō Indūtiomārō,[1] ut docuimus, ad eius propinquōs ā Trēverīs imperium dēfertur. Illī fīnitimōs Germānōs sollicitāre et pecūniam pollicērī nōn dēsistunt. Cum ā proximīs impetrāre nōn possent, ulteriōrēs temptant. Inventīs[2] nōn nūllīs cīvitātibus iūre iūrandō inter sē cōnfirmant obsidibusque dē pecūniā cavent[3]; Ambiorīgem sibi societāte et foedere adiungunt.[4] Quibus rēbus cognitīs Caesar, cum undique bellum parārī vidēret, Nerviōs, Aduatucōs, Menapiōs adiūnctīs Cisrhēnānīs[5] omnibus Germānīs esse in armīs, Senonēs ad imperātum nōn venīre et cum Carnutibus fīnitimīsque cīvitātibus cōnsilia commūnicāre,[6] ā Trēverīs Germānōs crēbrīs lēgātiōnibus sollicitārī, mātūrius sibi dē bellō cōgitandum putāvit. — DE BELLO GALLICO, VI, 2

VOCABULARY

sollicitō, 1, *stir up*

pecūnia, ae, f., *money*

societās, ātis, f., *alliance*

foedus, eris, n., *treaty*

cōgitō, 1, *consider*

NOTES

[1] **Indūtiomārō**: he was killed by the soldiers of Labienus, who all aimed their weapons at him when he approached the camp with his cavalry in a foolhardy way. Labienus had offered great rewards to those who should kill Indutiomarus and thus end the uprising.   [2] **inventīs**: composition?
[3] **obsidibusque . . . cavent**: *give hostages as security for the money*.   [4] **adiungunt**: composition?   [5] **Cisrhēnānīs**: cis, *on this side of*, + **Rhēnus** + **ānus**, *pertaining to*.   [6] **commūnicāre**: English derivative?

Think of English words from **dēfertur, pecūniam, ulteriōrēs, inventīs, foedere,** and observe how the meaning of the Latin word helps to make plain the meaning of the English.

EXERCISE XCVIII

Order of words: the modifiers of the parts of an ablative absolute often stand between the words that compose it, the degree of emphasis of each word determining its position.

AFTER A RAID AMONG THE NERVII CÆSAR ENTERS THE TERRITORY OF THE SENONES

Itaque nōndum **hieme** cōnfectā, proximīs quattuor coāctīs legiōnibus, dē imprōvīsō in fīnīs Nerviōrum contendit, et, priusquam illī aut convenīre aut profugere possent, magnō **pecoris** atque hominum numerō captō atque eā **praedā** mīlitibus concessā vāstātīsque agrīs, in dēditiōnem venīre atque obsidēs sibi dare coēgit. Eō celeriter cōnfectō negōtiō rūrsus in hīberna legiōnēs redūxit. Conciliō Galliae prīmō vēre, ut[1] īnstituerat, indictō, cum reliquī praeter Senonēs, Carnutēs, Trēverōsque vēnissent, initium bellī ac dēfectiōnis hoc[2] esse arbitrātus,[3] ut omnia postpōnere vidērētur, concilium Lutetiam[4] Parīsiōrum trānsfert. Cōnfīnēs[5] erant hī Senonibus cīvitātemque patrum memoriā coniūnxerant, sed ab hōc cōnsiliō āfuisse exīstimābantur. Hāc rē[6] prō suggestū prōnūntiātā eōdem diē cum legiōnibus in Senonēs proficīscitur magnīsque itineribus eō pervenit. — DE BELLO GALLICO, VI, 3

VOCABULARY

vēr, vēris, n., *spring*
indīcō, 3, **dīxī, dictus,** *appoint*
dēfectiō, ōnis, f., *revolt*

postpōnō, 3, **posuī, positus,**
    deem less important
suggestus, ūs, m., *tribunal*

NOTES

[1] **ut:** notice the mood following.   [2] **hoc:** refers to **praeter . . . Trēverōs,** i.e. their absence.   [3] **arbitrātus:** synonym of **exīstimō.**   [4] **Lutetiam:** the modern Paris.   [5] **cōnfīnēs:** synonym of **fīnitimus.**   [6] **hāc rē:** i.e. ab . . . āfuisse.

EXERCISE XCIX

Order of words: in any phrase the determining or emphatic word comes first.

CÆSAR'S ARRIVAL DISCONCERTS THE SENONES AND THE CARNUTES, AND THEY SUBMIT

Cognitō eius[1] adventū Accō,[2] quī prīnceps eius cōnsilī[3] fuerat, iubet in oppida multitūdinem convenīre. Cōnantibus,[4] priusquam id efficī posset, adesse Rōmānōs nūntiātur. Necessāriō sententiā dēsistunt lēgātōsque dēprecandī causā ad Caesarem mittunt; adeunt per Aeduōs, quōrum antīquitus[5] erat in fidē cīvitās. Libenter Caesar petentibus Aeduīs dat veniam excūsātiōnemque[6] accipit, quod aestīvum tempus īnstantis[7] bellī, nōn quaestiōnis[8] esse arbitrābātur.[9] Obsidibus imperātīs centum hōs Aeduīs custōdiendōs trādit. Eōdem Carnutēs lēgātōs obsidēsque mittunt ūsī dēprecātōribus[10] Rēmīs, quōrum erant in clientēlā; eadem ferunt respōnsa. **Peragit** concilium Caesar equitēsque imperat cīvitātibus.

<div align="right">DE BELLO GALLICO, VI, 4</div>

VOCABULARY

adsum, esse, fuī, ——, *be present*
dēprecor, 1, *beg off*
libenter, *willingly*
venia, ae, f., *pardon*

aestīvus, a, um, *of summer, summer*
custōdiō, 4, **īvī, ītus,** *watch*
clientēla, ae, f., *protection*

NOTES

[1] **eius:** i.e. Cæsar's.   [2] **Accō:** a leader of the Senones.   [3] **cōnsilī:** i.e. for a revolt.   [4] **cōnantibus:** i.e. **in oppida convenīre.**   [5] **antīquitus:** adverb from **antīquus,** which is synonymous with **vetus.**   [6] **excūsātiōnem:** **excūsō** + **tiō.**   [7] **īnstantis:** *impending,* i.e. the one with the Treveri. [8] **quaestiōnis: quaerō** + **tiō.**   [9] **arbitrābātur:** synonym of **exīstimō.**   [10] **dēprecātōribus:** derivation?

Under the leadership of Vercingetorix, the most heroic figure in the struggle of Gaul against the Romans, a general uprising occurs. After much desperate fighting, sacking of towns, and laying waste of fields, the advantage being on the side of the Romans, Vercingetorix makes a last stand in Alesia, now called Alise-Sainte-Reine, a town in central Gaul.

THE SIEGE OF
ALESIA

o *castella*
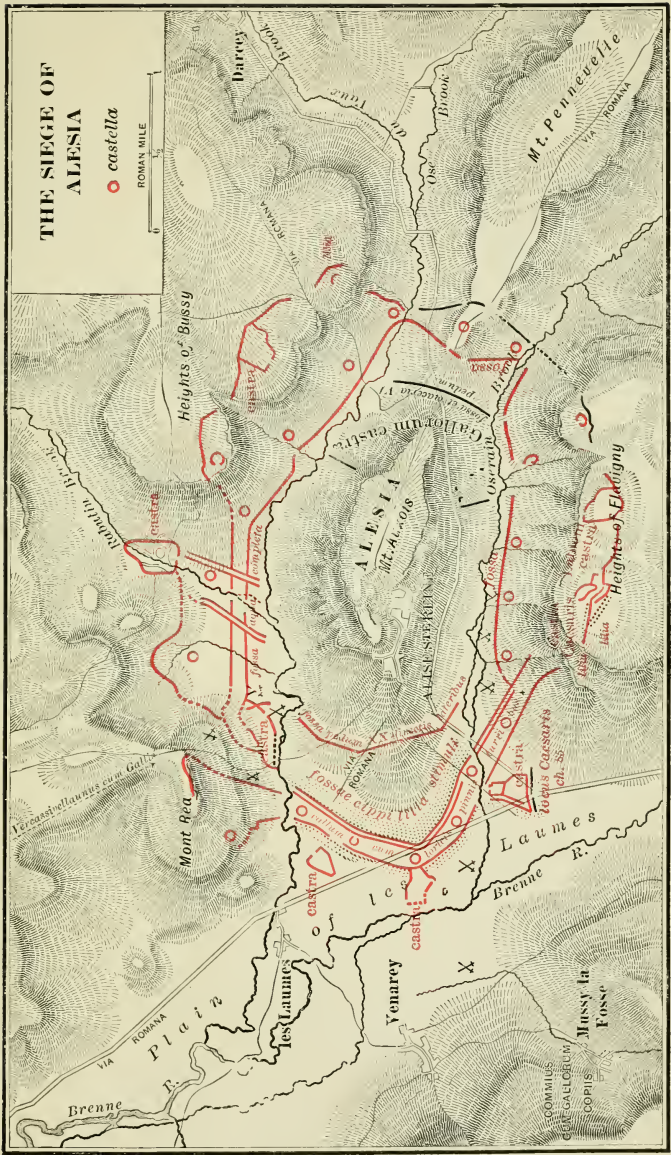
ROMAN MILE

DE BELLO GALLICO, VII

VERCINGETORIX WITHDRAWS INTO ALESIA, CÆSAR AT HIS HEELS

68. Fugātō omnī equitātū Vercingetorīx cōpiās suās, ut[1] prō castrīs conlocāverat, redūxit prōtinusque[2] Alesiam, quod[3] est oppidum Mandubiōrum, iter facere coepit, celeriterque impedīmenta' ex castrīs ēdūcī et sē subsequī iussit. Caesar impedīmentīs in proximum collem ductīs, duābus legiōnibus praesidiō relictīs, secūtus hostīs quantum[4] diēī tempus est passum, circiter tribus mīlibus ex novissimō agmine interfectīs, alterō diē ad Alesiam castra fēcit. Perspectō urbis sitū perterritīsque hostibus, quod equitātū,[5] quā maximē parte exercitūs cōnfīdēbant, erant pulsī, adhortātus[6] ad labōrem mīlitēs Alesiam circumvāllāre īnstituit.

THE NATURAL SURROUNDINGS OF ALESIA

69. Ipsum erat oppidum in colle summō, admodum ēditō locō, ut nisi[7] **obsidiōne** expugnārī nōn posse vidērētur; cuius collis rādīcēs duo duābus ex partibus flūmina subluēbant. Ante oppidum

fugō, 1, *put to flight*
situs, ūs, m., *situation*
circumvāllō, 1, *build intrenchments around*

admodum, *very*
subluō, 3, ——, lūtum, *wash*

[1] ut: notice the mood of **conlocāverat**.   [2] prōtinus: synonym of **statim**.
[3] quod: takes the gender of **oppidum**.   [4] quantum: *as far as*.   [5] equitātū: ablative of specification, but translate as subject of the verb which it limits.
[6] adhortātus: = hortātus.   [7] nisi: with obsidiōne.

Observe that the words **prōtinus, celeriter, proximum,** and **quantum . . . passum,** and the short, crisp phrases make vivid the haste of this flight and the fierceness of the pursuit.

plānitiēs circiter mīlia passuum tria in longitūdinem patēbat; reliquīs ex omnibus partibus collēs mediocrī interiectō[1] spatiō parī altitūdinis fastīgiō oppidum cingēbant. Sub mūrō, quae pars collis ad orientem sōlem spectābat, hunc omnem locum cōpiae Gallōrum complēverant fossamque et māceriam[2] in altitūdinem sex pedum praedūxerant.[3] Eius mūnītiōnis quae ab Rōmānīs īnstituēbātur circuitus **ūndecim** mīlia passuum tenēbat. Castra opportūnīs locīs erant posita octōna castellaque vīgintī tria facta, quibus in castellīs interdiū statiōnēs pōnēbantur, nē qua[4] subitō ēruptiō fieret; haec eadem noctū excubitōribus ac firmīs praesidiīs tenēbantur.

A CAVALRY BATTLE IS FOUGHT, IN WHICH CÆSAR'S GERMAN TROOPS KILL MANY OF THE GAULS

70. Opere[5] īnstitūtō fit equestre proelium in eā plānitiē quam intermissam collibus tria mīlia passuum in longitūdinem[6] patēre suprā dēmōnstrāvimus. Summā vī ab utrīsque contenditur.[7] Labōrantibus nostrīs Caesar Germānōs submittit legiōnēsque prō castrīs cōnstituit, nē qua subitō irruptiō ab hostium peditātū[8] fīat. Praesidiō legiōnum additō[9] nostrīs animus augētur; hostēs in fugam coniectī sē ipsī multitūdine[10] impediunt atque angustiōribus portīs relictīs coartantur. Germānī ācrius ūsque ad mūnītiōnēs sequuntur. Fit magna caedēs; nōn nūllī relictīs equīs fossam trānsīre et māceriam trānscendere cōnantur. Paulum legiōnēs Caesar quās prō vāllō

plānitiēs, ēī, f., *plain*	**irruptiō, ōnis**, f., *invasion*
mediocris, e, *moderate*	**coartō, 1**, *press together*
fastīgium, fastīgī, n., *degree*	**ūsque**, *all the way*
interdiū, *by day*	**caedēs, is**, f., *slaughter*
excubitor, ōris, m., *watchman*	

[1] interiectō: composition?   [2] māceriam: synonym of mūrus.   [3] praedūxerant: composition?   [4] qua: *any.*   [5] opere: i.e. of building the encompassing fortifications.   [6] longitūdinem: derivation?   [7] contenditur: impersonal.   [8] peditātū: synonym of pedites. Compare equitātus and equites.   [9] additō: participle. English derivative?   [10] multitūdine: states the cause of impediunt.

cōnstituerat prōmovērī iubet. Nōn minus quī intrā mūnītiōnēs erant
Gallī perturbantur, venīrī[1] ad sē **cōnfestim** exīstimantēs ad arma
conclāmant; nōn nūllī perterritī in oppidum irrumpunt.[2] Ver-
cingetorīx iubet portās claudī, nē castra nūdentur. Multīs interfectīs,
complūribus equīs captīs Germānī sēsē recipiunt.

VERCINGETORIX SENDS AWAY ALL THE CAVALRY, URGING THEM TO RAISE FORCES FOR THE RELIEF OF ALESIA

71. Vercingetorīx, priusquam mūnītiōnēs ab Rōmānīs perfici-
antur, cōnsilium capit omnem ab sē equitātum noctū dīmittere.
Discēdentibus[3] mandat ut suam quisque eōrum cīvitātem adeat
omnīsque quī per aetātem arma ferre possint ad bellum cōgant;
sua in[4] illōs merita prōpōnit obtestāturque ut suae salūtis ratiōnem[5]
habeant, neu[6] sē optimē dē commūnī lībertāte meritum[7] hostibus
in cruciātum dēdant. Quod sī indīligentiōrēs fuerint, mīlia hominum
dēlēcta octōgintā ūnā sēcum interitūra dēmōnstrat. Ratiōne[8] initā
frūmentum sē exiguē[9] diērum trīgintā habēre, sed paulō etiam
longius tolerārī[10] posse parcendō. Hīs datīs mandātīs[11] quā erat
nostrum opus intermissum secundā vigiliā silentiō[12] equitātum
dīmittit. Frūmentum omne ad sē referrī iubet; capitis poenam iīs
quī nōn pāruerint cōnstituit; **pecus**, cuius magna erat cōpia ā

claudō, 3, **clausī, clausus**, *shut*	**intereō**, 4, **iī, itum**, *perish*
aetās, ātis, f., *age*	**parcō**, 3, **pepercī, parsum**, *spare*
obtestor, 1, *call to witness*	**poena, ae,** f., *punishment*
indīligēns, entis, *careless*	**pāreō**, 2, **uī,** ——, *obey*

[1] **venīrī**: *the enemy were coming.* Impersonal.   [2] **irrumpunt**: from the
root of this verb is derived **irruptiō**.   [3] **discēdentibus**: understand **iīs**.
[4] **in**: *toward.*   [5] **ratiōnem**: *regard.*   [6] **neu**: *and not.*   [7] **meritum**: par-
ticiple; translate by a relative clause.   [8] **ratiōne**: *reckoning.* This begins
an indirect statement, depending on the verb **dēmōnstrat**.   [9] **exiguē**:
synonym of **vix**.   [10] **tolerārī**: nearly = **ferō**; impersonal.   [11] **mandātīs**:
noun.   [12] **silentiō**: noun. English derivative?

Mandubiīs compulsa, virītim[1] **distribuit;** frūmentum parcē[2] et
paulātim mētīrī īnstituit; cōpiās omnīs quās prō oppidō conlocāverat
in oppidum recipit. Hīs ratiōnibus auxilia Galliae exspectāre et
bellum administrāre parat.

THE GAULS RAISE A GREAT ARMY AND PROCEED TO ALESIA

76. Huius operā Commī,[3] ut anteā[4] dēmōnstrāvimus, fidēlī[5] atque
ūtilī superiōribus annīs erat ūsus in Britanniā Caesar; prō quibus
meritīs cīvitātem eius immūnem esse iusserat, iūra lēgēsque red-
diderat, atque ipsī Morinōs attribuerat. Tanta tamen ūniversae[6]
Galliae cōnsēnsiō[7] fuit lībertātis vindicandae[8] et prīstinae bellī laudis
recuperandae ut neque beneficiīs neque amīcitiae memoriā movē-
rētur, omnēsque et animō et opibus in id bellum incum-
berent. Coāctīs equitum mīlibus octō et peditum circiter ducentīs
quīnquāgintā, haec in Aeduōrum fīnibus recēnsēbantur nume-
rusque inībātur, praefectī cōnstituēbantur; Commiō Atrebātī,
Viridomārō et Eporēdorīgī Aeduīs, Vercassivellaunō Arvernō,

mētior, 4, **mēnsus,** *measure out*	**recuperō,** 1, *recover*
immūnis, e, *untaxed*	**(ops), opis,** f., *resources*
lēx, lēgis, f., *law*	**incumbō,** 3, **cubuī,** ——, *exert*
attribuō, 3, **uī, ūtus,** *assign*	*oneself*
laus, laudis, f., *glory*	**recēnseō,** 2, **uī, us,** *review*

[1] **virītim:** vir + (ī)tim, *man by man.* Compare **nōminātim.**   [2] **parcē:**
adverb; compare **parcō.**   [3] **Commī:** he was sent by Cæsar into Britain to
persuade the states there to submit to the Roman rule.   [4] **anteā:** adverb,
synonym of **ante.**   [5] **fidēlī:** fidēs + ēlis, *pertaining to.*   [6] **ūniversae:**
English derivative? Synonym of **tōtus.**   [7] **cōnsēnsiō:** con + sentiō + tiō.
[8] **vindicandae:** synonym of **dēfendō.**

In order to bring about the surrender of Alesia and to prevent other
forces being added to those in the town, Cæsar constructed an elaborate
system of fortifications, extending fourteen miles. These consisted of
deep trenches, high walls, and several rows of sharpened stakes, besides
others set up at the bottom of pits, which were covered with branches to
conceal them.

cōnsobrīnō Vercingetorīgis, summa[1] imperī trāditur.   Hīs[2] dēlēctī[3]
ex cīvitātibus attribuuntur, quōrum cōnsiliō bellum administrārētur.
Omnēs **alacrēs** et fīdūciae[4] plēnī[5] ad Alesiam proficīscuntur, neque
erat omnium quisquam quī aspectum[6] modo tantae multitūdinis
sustinērī posse arbitrārētur, praesertim ancipitī[7] proeliō, cum ex
oppidō ēruptiōne pugnārētur, forīs tantae cōpiae equitātūs pedi-
tātūsque cernerentur.

THE GAULS IN ALESIA DEBATE THEIR FUTURE ACTION.
CRITOGNATUS BEGINS HIS SPEECH

77. At iī quī Alesiae obsidēbantur, praeteritā diē quā auxilia
suōrum exspectāverant, cōnsūmptō omnī frūmentō, īnsciī[8] quid in
Aeduīs gererētur, conciliō coāctō dē .exitū suārum fortūnārum
cōnsultābant.[9]   Ac variīs dictīs sententiīs, quārum pars dēditiōnem,
pars, dum vīrēs suppeterent, ēruptiōnem cēnsēbat, nōn praetereunda
ōrātiō Critognātī vidētur propter eius[10] singulārem et nefāriam
crūdēlitātem. Hīc summō in Arvernīs ortus locō et magnae habitus
auctōritātis,[11] " Nihil," inquit,[12] " dē eōrum sententiā dictūrus sum
quī turpissimam servitūtem dēditiōnis nōmine appellant, neque hōs
habendōs[13] cīvium locō neque ad concilium adhibendōs cēnseō.
Cum hīs mihi rēs[14] est quī ēruptiōnem probant ; quōrum in cōnsiliō

cōnsobrīnus, ī, m., *first cousin*
forīs, *outside*
obsideō, 2, sēdī, sessus, *besiege*
praetereō, 4, iī, itus, *pass over*
exitus, ūs, m., *outcome*

suppetō, 3, petīvī, petītus, *hold out*
cēnseō, 2, uī, us, *propose, consider*
nefārius, a, um, *wicked*
crūdēlitās, ātis, f., *cruelty*
turpis, e, *shameful*

---

[1] **summa**: noun.   [2] **hīs**: i.e. those just mentioned.   [3] **dēlēctī**: under-
stand **hominēs**.   [4] **fīdūciae**: synonym of **fidēs**.   [5] **plēnī**: synonym of **com-
plētus**.   [6] **aspectum**: synonym of **cōnspectus**.   [7] **ancipitī**: *in front and
rear*.   [8] **īnsciī**: **in** + **sciō**.   [9] **cōnsultābant**: English derivative ?   [10] **eius**:
i.e. **ōrātiōnis**.   [11] **auctōritātis**: a quality of **hīc**.   [12] **inquit**: defective verb,
synonym of **dīcō**.   [13] **habendōs**: understand **esse**. Compare this form with
dictūrus sum above. **Habeō**, *consider*.   [14] **rēs**: *business*.

Note the size and the spirit of the army which came to free Alesia.

omnium vestrum cōnsēnsū[1] prīstinae residēre virtūtis memoria
vidētur. Animī est ista mollitia, nōn virtūs, paulisper inopiam ferre
nōn posse.[2] Quī[3] sē ultrō mortī offerant facilius reperiuntur quam
quī dolōrem[4] patienter[5] ferant."

CRITOGNATUS APPEALS TO HIS HEARERS NOT TO LOSE FAITH IN THE GAULS WHO HAVE NOT YET BEEN ABLE TO REACH THEM

77. "Atque ego hanc sententiam probārem[6] (tantum apud mē
dignitās potest), sī nūllam praeterquam[7] vītae nostrae iactūram fierī
vidērem; sed in cōnsiliō capiendō omnem Galliam respiciāmus,[8]
quam ad nostrum auxilium concitāvimus. Quid,[9] hominum mīlibus
octōgintā ūnō locō interfectīs, propinquīs[10] cōnsanguineīsque nostrīs
animī fore exīstimātis, sī paene in ipsīs cadāveribus proeliō dēcer-
tāre cōgentur? Nōlīte[11] hōs vestrō auxiliō exspoliāre, quī vestrae
salūtis causā suum perīculum neglēxērunt, nec stultitiā ac temeritāte
vestrā aut animī imbēcillitāte omnem Galliam prōsternere et per-
petuae servitūtī subicere. An,[12] quod ad diem nōn vēnērunt, dē
eōrum fidē cōnstantiāque dubitātis? Quid ergō? Rōmānōs in illīs

resideō, 2, sēdī, ——, *linger*	exspoliō, 1, *deprive*
mollitia, ae, f., *weakness*	stultitia, ae, f., *folly*
dignitās, ātis, f., *honor*	temeritās, ātis, f., *rashness*
vīta, ae, f., *life*	imbēcillitās, ātis, f., *weakness*
iactūra, ae, f., *loss*	prōsternō, 3, strāvī, strātus, *ruin*
concitō, 1, *stir up*	ergō, *then*, *therefore*
cadāver, eris, n., *dead body*	

---

[1] cōnsēnsū: con + sentiō + tus.   [2] paulisper . . . posse: used as a noun
in apposition with ista.   [3] quī: the antecedent is the subject of reperiuntur.
[4] dolōrem: doleō + or, *act of*.   [5] patienter: adverb from the present participle
of patior. English derivative?   [6] probārem: *should approve*.   [7] praeter-
quam: adverb; compare with praeter.   [8] respiciāmus: introduce the trans-
lation by *let*.   [9] quid: with animī.   [10] propinquīs, etc.: dative of the
possessor. In translating, make this the subject of the clause, and render
fore by the appropriate tense of *have*.   [11] nōlīte: *do not*.   [12] an: the sign
of a question, introducing the clause beginning with dē. Translate by *or*.

ulteriōribus mūnītiōnibus animíne[1] causā cotīdiē exercērī putātis?
Sī illōrum nūntiīs cōnfīrmārī nōn potestis omnī aditū praesaeptō,
hīs ūtiminī testibus appropinquāre eōrum adventum[2]; cuius reī
timōre exterritī[3] diem noctemque in opere versantur."

CRITOGNATUS PROPOSES A BARBAROUS PLAN FOR RESISTING THE ROMANS

77. "Quid ergō meī cōnsilī[4] est? Facere quod nostrī maiōrēs
nēquāquam parī bellō Cimbrōrum Teutonumque fēcērunt; quī in
oppida compulsī ac similī inopiā subāctī eōrum corporibus[5] quī aetāte
ad bellum inūtilēs[6] vidēbantur vītam tolerāvērunt[7] neque sē hostibus
trādidērunt. Cuius reī sī exemplum nōn habērēmus, tamen lībertātis
causā īnstituī[8] et posterīs prōdī[9] pulcherrimum iūdicārem. Nam
quid illī simile bellō fuit? Dēpopulātā[10] Galliā Cimbrī magnāque
illātā calamitāte fīnibus quidem nostrīs aliquandō excessērunt atque
aliās terrās petiērunt, iūra, lēgēs, agrōs, lībertātem nōbīs relīquērunt.
Rōmānī vērō quid petunt aliud aut quid volunt, nisi invidiā adductī,
quōs[11] fāmā nōbilīs potentīsque bellō cognōvērunt, hōrum in agrīs
cīvitātibusque cōnsīdere atque hīs aeternam[12] iniungere[13] servitūtem?
Neque enim umquam aliā condiciōne bella gessērunt. Quod sī ea

exerceō, 2, uī, itus, *occupy*
praesaepiō, 4, saepsī, saeptus,
  block
testis, is, m., f., *witness*
ergō, *then*, *therefore*
nēquāquam, *by no means*
similis, e, *like*
subigō, 3, ēgī, āctus, *drive*

aetās, ātis, f., *age*
vīta, ae, f., *life*
exemplum, ī, n., *precedent*
aliquandō, *at length*
lēx, lēgis, f., *law*
invidia, ae, f., *envy*
fāma, ae, f., *reputation*
umquam, *ever*

[1] animíne: note the question sign.   [2] adventum: subject of appropinquāre.   [3] exterritī: synonym of perterritī.   [4] cōnsilī: predicate genitive. [5] corporibus: ablative of means.   [6] inūtilēs: in + ūtilis, from ūtor.   [7] tolerāvērunt: synonym of ferō.   [8] īnstituī: understand id as subject, referring to exemplum.   [9] prōdī: synonym of trādō.   [10] dēpopulātā: synonym of populor.   [11] quōs: the antecedent is hōrum.   [12] aeternam: synonym of perpetuus.   [13] iniungere: composition?

quae in longinquīs nātiōnibus geruntur ignōrātis, respicite fīnitimam Galliam, quae in prōvinciam redācta, iūre et lēgibus commūtātīs, secūribus[1] subiecta perpetuā premitur servitūte."

THE GAULS SEND OUT FROM ALESIA THOSE USELESS FOR FIGHTING

78. Sententiīs dictīs cōnstituunt ut iī quī valētūdine aut aetāte inūtilēs[2] sint bellō oppidō excēdant, atque omnia prius[3] experiantur quam ad Critognātī sententiam dēscendant[4]; illō tamen potius ūtendum[5] cōnsiliō, sī rēs cōgat atque auxilia morentur, quam aut dēditiōnis aut pācis subeundam condiciōnem. Mandubiī,[6] quī eōs[7] oppidō recēperant, cum līberīs atque uxōribus exīre cōguntur. Hī cum ad mūnītiōnēs Rōmānōrum accessissent, flentēs omnibus precibus ōrābant ut sē in servitūtem receptōs cibō iuvārent. At Caesar dispositīs[8] in vāllō custōdiīs recipī[9] prohibēbat.

THE MAIN FORCES OF THE GAULS REACH ALESIA AND ALL PREPARE FOR A SALLY

79. Intereā Commius reliquīque ducēs quibus summa imperī permissa erat cum omnibus cōpiīs ad Alesiam perveniunt, et colle exteriōre occupātō nōn longius mīlle passibus ā nostrīs mūnītiōnibus cōnsīdunt. Posterō diē equitātū ex castrīs ēductō omnem eam plānitiem quam in longitūdinem mīlia passuum tria patēre

ignōrō, 1, *be unacquainted with*	**uxor**, ōris, f., *wife*
commūtō, 1, *change*	**custōdia**, ae, f., *guard*
valētūdō, inis, f., *sickness*	**plānitiēs**, ēī, f., *plain*
aetās, ātis, f., *age*	

---

[1] **secūribus**: *axes*, but used as a symbol of Roman authority.   [2] **inūtilēs**: in + ūtilis, from ūtor.   [3] **prius**: with **quam**.   [4] **dēscendant**: English derivative?   [5] **ūtendum**: impersonal; an indirect statement with **esse** understood. Make **cōnsiliō** the subject in the translation.   [6] **Mandubiī**: the tribe in whose territory Alesia was situated.   [7] **eōs**: the Gauls.   [8] **dispositīs**: composition?   [9] **recipī**: *from being received*.

dēmōnstrāvimus complent, pedestrīsque cōpiās paulum ab eō locō abductās[1] in locīs superiōribus cōnstituunt. Erat ex oppidō Alesiā dēspectus[2] in campum. Concurrunt hīs auxiliīs vīsīs; fit grātulātiō inter eōs, atque omnium animī ad laetitiam excitantur.[3] Itaque prōductīs cōpiīs ante oppidum cōnsistunt, et proximam fossam crātibus integunt atque aggere explent,[4] sēque ad ēruptiōnem atque omnīs cāsūs comparant.

AFTER A FIERCE FIGHT THE GAULS RETREAT AND THOSE IN THE TOWN LOSE HOPE

80. Caesar omnī exercitū ad utramque partem mūnītiōnum dispositō,[5] ut, sī ūsus veniat, suum quisque locum teneat et **nōverit,** equitātum ex castrīs ēdūcī et proelium committī iubet. Erat ex omnibus castrīs, quae summum undique iugum tenēbant, dēspectus, atque omnēs mīlitēs intentī[6] pugnae prōventum exspectābant. Gallī inter equitēs **rārōs**[7] sagittāriōs expedītōsque levis armātūrae interiēcerant,[8] quī suīs cēdentibus auxiliō succurrerent[9] et nostrōrum equitum impetūs sustinērent. Ab hīs complūrēs dē imprōvīsō vulnerātī proeliō excēdēbant. Cum suōs pugnā superiōrēs esse Gallī cōnfīderent et nostrōs multitūdine premī vidērent, ex omnibus partibus et iī quī mūnītiōnibus continēbantur et iī quī ad auxilium convēnerant clāmōre et ululātū suōrum animōs cōnfīrmābant. Quod in cōnspectū omnium rēs gerēbātur neque rēctē aut turpiter

grātulātiō, ōnis, f., *rejoicing*
laetitia, ae f., *gladness*
crātēs, ium, f., *wickerwork*
integō, 3, tēxī, tēctus, *cover over*
prōventus, ūs, m., *outcome*

sagittārius, sagittārī, m., *bowman*
armātūra, ae, f., *armor*
ululātus, ūs, m., *yelling*
rēctē, *rightly*
turpiter, *disgracefully*

---

[1] abductās: composition?   [2] dēspectus: dēspiciō + tus.   [3] excitantur: English derivative?   [4] explent: note the prefix, and compare with compleō.   [5] dispositō: composition?   [6] intentī: adjective. English derivative?   [7] rārōs: *here and there.*   [8] interiēcerant: composition? [9] succurrerent: sub, *up to.*

factum cēlārī poterat, utrōsque et laudis cupiditās[1] et timor ignō-
miniae ad virtūtem excitābat.[2] Cum ā merīdiē[3] prope ad sōlis
occāsum dubiā[4] victōriā pugnārētur, Germānī ūnā in parte cōn-
fertīs turmīs in hostīs impetum fēcērunt eōsque prōpulērunt[5];
quibus in fugam coniectīs sagittāriī circumventī interfectīque sunt.
Item ex reliquīs partibus nostrī cēdentīs ūsque ad castra īnsecūtī suī
colligendī facultātem nōn dedērunt. At iī quī Alesiā prōcessērunt,
maestī prope victōriā dēspērātā,[6] sē in oppidum recēpērunt.

THE GAULS OUTSIDE THE TOWN, HELPED BY THOSE WITHIN, TRY A NIGHT ATTACK

81. Ūnō diē intermissō Gallī atque hōc spatiō[7] magnō crātium,
scālārum, harpagōnum numerō effectō mediā nocte silentiō ex
castrīs ēgressī ad campestrīs mūnītiōnēs accēdunt. Subitō clāmōre
sublātō, quā significātiōne[8] quī[9] in oppidō obsidēbantur dē suō
adventū cognōscere possent, crātīs prōicere, fundīs, **sagittīs**, lapi-
dibus nostrōs dē vāllō prōturbāre, reliquaque quae ad oppugnā-
tiōnem pertinent parant administrāre. Eōdem tempore clāmōre
exaudītō[10] dat tubā signum suīs Vercingetorīx atque ex oppidō
ēdūcit. Nostrī, ut superiōribus diēbus suus cuique erat locus

laus, laudis, f., *praise*	scālae, ārum, f., *scaling ladders*
ignōminia, ae, f., *disgrace*	harpagō, ōnis, m., *wall hook*
turma, ae, f., *troop*	silentium, silentī, n., *silence*
ūsque, *all the way*	campester, tris, tre, *in the plain*
colligō, 3, lēgī, lēctus, *rally*	obsideō, 2, sēdī, sessus, *besiege*
maestus, a, um, *sad*	funda, ae, f., *sling*
crātēs, ium, f., *wickerwork*	prōturbō, 1, *drive off*

---

[1] **cupiditās**: derivation?   [2] **excitābat**: English derivative?   [3] **merīdiē**: medius + diēs.   [4] **dubiā**: adjective; compare with dubitō.   [5] **prōpulērunt**: composition?   [6] **dēspērātā**: composition?   [7] **spatiō**: expresses the time within which the action of **effectō** happened.   [8] **significātiōne**: signum + faciō + tiō.   [9] **quī**: understand iī, subject of **possent**, as antecedent.   [10] **exaudītō**: composition?

attribūtus, ad mūnītiōnēs accēdunt; fundīs lībrīlibus sudibusque, quās in opere disposuerant, ac glandibus Gallōs prōterrent.[1] Prōspectū[2] tenebrīs **adēmptō** multa utrimque vulnera accipiuntur; complūra tormentīs tēla coniciuntur. At Mārcus Antōnius et Gāius Trebōnius lēgātī, quibus hae partēs ad dēfendendum obvēnerant,[3] quā ex parte nostrōs premī intellēxerant, hīs auxiliō ex ulteriōribus castellīs dēductōs submittēbant.

THE GAULS, HAVING TWICE TRIED TO FORCE THE WORKS, RETIRE

82. Dum longius ā mūnītiōne aberant Gallī, plūs multitūdine tēlōrum prōficiēbant[4]; posteāquam[5] propius successērunt, aut sē stimulīs[6] inopīnantēs induēbant aut in scrobīs dēlātī trānsfodiēbantur aut ex vāllō ac turribus trāiectī pīlīs mūrālibus[7] interībant. Multīs undique vulneribus acceptīs, nūllā mūnītiōne perruptā, cum lūx appeteret,[8] veritī nē ab latere apertō ex superiōribus castrīs ēruptiōne circumvenīrentur, sē ad suōs recēpērunt. At interiōrēs dum ea quae ā Vercingetorīge ad ēruptiōnem praeparāta[9] erant prōferunt, priōrēs

attribuō, 3, uī, ūtus, *assign*
lībrīle, is, *throwing a stone weighing a pound*
sudis, is, f., *stake*
glāns, glandis, f., *bullet*
tenebrae, ārum, f., *darkness*
tormentum, ī, n., *hurling machine*
inopīnāns, inopīnantis, *unaware*

induō, 3, duī, dūtus, *impale*
scrobis, is, m., *pit*
trānsfodiō, 3, fōdī, fossus, *run through*
trāiciō, 3, iēcī, iectus, *transfix*
intereō, 4, iī, itum, *perish*
perrumpō, 3, rūpī, ruptus, *break through*

---

[1] prōterrent: prō, *off.* [2] prōspectū: compare with cōnspectus, noting the prefix. [3] obvēnerant: composition? [4] plūs prōficiēbant: *they did more execution.* [5] posteāquam: = postquam. [6] stimulīs: Cæsar describes these as "stakes a foot long with iron hooks on them." They were driven into the ground around and between pits. [7] mūrālibus: mūrus + ālis, *pertaining to.* [8] appeteret: synonym of appropinquō. [9] praeparāta: composition?

Observe the many words in chapter 81 referring to the equipment used by the Gauls and Romans in the assault.

fossās explent,[1] diūtius in hīs rēbus administrandīs morātī prius[2]
suōs discessisse cognōvērunt quam mūnītiōnibus appropinquārent.
Ita rē īnfectā[3] in oppidum revertērunt.

SIXTY THOUSAND OF THE GAULS PREPARE TO ASSAULT THE UPPER CAMP

83. Bis magnō cum dētrīmentō repulsī Gallī quid agant cōn-
sulunt; locōrum[4] perītōs[5] adhibent, ex hīs superiōrum castrōrum
situs mūnītiōnēsque cognōscunt. Erat ā septentriōnibus collis quem
propter magnitūdinem circuitūs opere[6] circumplectī nōn potuerant
nostrī, necessāriōque paene inīquō[7] locō et lēniter dēclīvī castra
fēcerant. Haec Gāius Antistius Rēgīnus et Gāius Canīnius Rebilus
lēgātī cum duābus legiōnibus obtinēbant. Cognitīs per explōrātōrēs
regiōnibus ducēs hostium sexāgintā mīlia ex omnī numérō dēligunt,
eārum cīvitātum quae maximam virtūtis opīniōnem habēbant; quid
quōque[8] pactō agī placeat occultē inter sē cōnstituunt; adeundī
tempus dēfīniunt cum merīdiēs[9] esse videātur. Hīs cōpiīs Vercassi-
vellaunum Arvernum, ūnum ex quattuor ducibus, propinquum
Vercingetorīgis, praeficiunt. Ille ex castrīs prīmā vigiliā ēgressus
prope cōnfectō sub lūcem[10] itinere post montem sē occultāvit mīli-
tēsque ex nocturnō[11] labōre **sēsē reficere** iussit. Cum iam merīdiēs
appropinquāre vidērētur, ad ea castra quae suprā dēmōnstrāvimus
contendit; eōdemque tempore equitātus ad campestrīs mūnītiōnēs
accēdere et reliquae cōpiae prō castrīs sēsē ostendere coepērunt.

situs, ūs, m., *location*
circumplector, 3, plexus, *encircle*
lēniter, *moderately*
dēclīvis, e, *s eep*
pactum, ī, n., *manner*

placeō, 2, uī, itum, *be pleasing*
dēfīniō, 4, īvī, ītus, *fix*
occultō, 1, *hide*
campester, tris, tre, *in the plain*

[1] explent: compare **compleō**, noting the prefix.   [2] prius: take with **quam**.
[3] īnfectā: in + faciō.   Compare English "done," "undone."   [4] locōrum:
limits perītōs.   [5] perītōs: understand eōs.   [6] opere: i. e. the fortifications.
[7] inīquō: in + aequus.   [8] quōque: not from quisque.   [9] merīdiēs: medius +
diēs.   [10] sub lūcem: *about dawn*.   [11] nocturnō: nox + urnus, a time suffix.

THE GAULS SALLY FORTH FROM ALESIA AND UNITE WITH THEIR FORCES OUTSIDE IN AN ATTACK ON THE ROMANS

84. Vercingetorīx ex arce Alesiae suōs cōnspicātus ex oppidō ēgreditur; crātīs, longuriōs, mūrālīs[1] falcīs, reliquaeque quae ēruptiōnis causā parāverat prōfert.[2] Pugnātur ūnō tempore omnibus locīs atque omnia temptantur; quae minimē vīsa pars fīrma est, hūc concurritur. Rōmānōrum manus tantīs mūnītiōnibus distinētur[3] nec facile plūribus locīs occurrit. Multum ad terrendōs[4] nostrōs valet clāmor quī post tergum pugnantibus exsistit, quod suum perīculum in aliēnā vident virtūte **cōnstāre;** omnia enim plērumque quae absunt vehementius hominum mentīs perturbant.

THE GAULS MAKE A DESPERATE EFFORT TO FORCE THE ROMAN LINES

85. Caesar idōneum locum nactus quid quāque in parte gerātur cognōscit,[5] labōrantibus subsidium submittit. Utrīsque[6] ad animum occurrit ūnum esse illud tempus quō[7] maximē contendī conveniat[8]: Gallī, nisi perfrēgerint mūnītiōnēs, dē omnī salūte dēspērant[9]; Rōmānī, sī rem obtinuerint, fīnem labōrum omnium exspectant. Maximē ad[10] superiōrēs mūnītiōnēs labōrātur,[11] quō Vercassivellaunum missum dēmōnstrāvimus. Inīquum[12] locī ad dēclīvitātem[13] fastīgium magnum habet mōmentum. Aliī tēla coniciunt, aliī

arx, arcis, f., *citadel*

crātēs, ium, f., *wickerwork*

longurius, longu'rī, m., *long pole*

falx, falcis, f., *hook*

exsistō, 3, stitī, ——, *arise*

vehementer, *furiously*

perfringō, 3, frēgī, frāctus, *break through*

fastīgium, fastīgī, n., *slope*

mōmentum, ī, n., *importance*

[1] mūrālīs: mūrus + ālis.   [2] prōfert: composition?   [3] distinētur: dis + teneō.   [4] terrendōs: compare with perterreō.   [5] cognōscit: understand et connecting this word with submittit.   [6] utrīsque: dative of reference; *of both parties.*   [7] quō: expresses time when.   [8] conveniat: *it is fitting.*   [9] dēspērant: composition?   [10] ad: *near.*   [11] labōrātur: impersonal.   [12] inīquum: composition?   [13] ad dēclīvitātem: *downward.*

testūdine factā subeunt; dēfatīgātīs invicem integrī succēdunt.
Agger ab ūniversīs in mūnītiōnem coniectus et ascēnsum[1] dat
Gallīs et ea quae in terrā occultāverant Rōmānī contegit; nec iam
arma nostrīs nec vīrēs suppetunt.

THE GAULS, REPULSED, ATTACK ANOTHER PART OF THE WORKS

86. Hīs rēbus cognitīs Caesar Labiēnum cum cohortibus sex
subsidiō[2] labōrantibus mittit. Imperat, sī sustinēre nōn possit,
dēductīs cohortibus ēruptiōne[3] pugnet; id, nisi necessāriō, nē faciat.
Ipse adit reliquōs, cohortātur nē labōrī succumbant; omnium
superiōrum dīmicātiōnum[4] frūctum in eō diē atque hōrā docet
cōnsistere. Interiōrēs[5] dēspērātīs campestribus locīs propter mag-
nitūdinem mūnītiōnum loca praerupta ascēnsū[6] temptant; hūc ea
quae parāverant cōnferunt. Multitūdine tēlōrum ex turribus prō-
pugnantīs dēturbant, aggere et crātibus fossās explent,[7] falcibus
vāllum ac lōrīcam rescindunt.

CÆSAR DRIVES BACK THE GAULS AND GOES TO THE HELP OF LABIENUS

87. Mittit prīmum Brūtum adulēscentem cum cohortibus Caesar,
post cum aliīs Gāium Fabium lēgātum; postrēmō ipse, cum vehe-
mentius pugnārētur, integrōs subsidiō addūcit. Restitūtō proeliō

dēfatīgō, 1, *weary*
invicem, *in turn*
integer, gra, grum, *fresh*
occultō, 1, *hide*
contegō, 3, tēxī, tēctus, *cover*
suppetō, 3, petīvī, petītus, *hold out*
succumbō, 3, cubuī, ——, *yield*
frūctus, ūs, m., *reward*

praeruptus, a, um, *steep*
crātēs, ium, f., *wickerwork*
falx, falcis, f., *hook*
lōrīca, ae, f., *breastwork*
rescindō, 3, scidī, scissus, *tear down*
adulēscēns, entis, m., *youth;* as adj.,
    young
vehementer, *furiously*

---

[1] ascēnsum: noun from ascendō.   [2] subsidiō: expresses purpose.
[3] ēruptiōne: expresses manner.   [4] dīmicātiōnum: derivation?   [5] interiō-
rēs: understand iī.   [6] ascēnsū: with praerupta.   [7] explent: compare
with compleō.

ac repulsīs hostibus eō quō Labiēnum mīserat contendit; cohortīs quattuor ex proximō castellō dēdūcit, equitum partem sē sequī, partem circumīre exteriōrēs mūnītiōnēs et ā tergō hostīs adorīrī iubet. Labiēnus, postquam neque aggerēs neque fossae vim hostium sustinēre poterant, coāctīs ūndecim cohortibus, quās ex proximīs praesidiīs dēductās fors obtulit,[1] Caesarem per nūntiōs facit certiōrem quid faciendum exīstimet. Accelerat[2] Caesar, ut proeliō intersit.

THE GALLIC FORCES OUTSIDE ARE DEFEATED, AND THOSE WITHIN ALESIA LOSE HOPE

88. Eius adventū ex colōre vestītūs cognitō, turmīsque equitum et cohortibus vīsīs quās sē sequī iusserat, ut dē locīs superiōribus haec[3] dēclīvia et dēvexa cernēbantur, hostēs proelium committunt. Utrimque clāmōre sublātō excipit rūrsus ex vāllō atque omnibus mūnītiōnibus clāmor. Nostrī ēmissīs[4] pīlīs gladiīs[5] rem gerunt. Repente[6] post tergum equitātus cernitur; cohortēs aliae appropinquant. Hostēs terga vertunt; fugientibus equitēs occurrunt. Fit magna caedēs. Sedulius, dux et prīnceps Lemovīcum, occīditur; Vercassivellaunus Arvernus vīvus in fugā comprehenditur; signa mīlitāria septuāgintā quattuor ad Caesarem referuntur; paucī ex tantō numerō sē incolumēs in castra recipiunt. Cōnspicātī ex oppidō caedem et fugam suōrum dēspērātā salūte cōpiās ā mūnītiōnibus redūcunt. Fit[7] prōtinus[8] hāc rē audītā ex castrīs Gallōrum fuga.

fors, fortis, f., *chance*	**caedēs, is,** f., *slaughter*
vestītus, ūs, m., *clothing, robe*	**vīvus, a, um,** *living*
turma, ae, f., *troop*	**comprehendō,** 3, **hendī, hēnsus,**
dēclīvis, e, *sloping*	*seize*
dēvexus, a, um, *steep*	

[1] **obtulit:** composition? [2] **accelerat:** ad + celerō; compare the adjective **celer.** [3] **haec:** i.e. places. [4] **ēmissīs:** synonym of iaciō. [5] **gladiīs:** states the means of **gerunt.** [6] **repente:** synonym of subitō. [7] **fit,** etc.: observe the inversion of the usual order of words. [8] **prōtinus:** synonym of **statim** and **continuō.**

Quod[1] nisi crēbrīs subsidiīs ac tōtīus diēī labōre mīlitēs essent dēfessī, omnēs hostium cōpiae dēlērī potuissent. Dē mediā nocte missus equitātus novissimum agmen cōnsequitur ; magnus numerus capitur atque interficitur, reliquī ex fugā in cīvitātēs discēdunt.

THE NEXT DAY AFTER A COUNCIL IN THE TOWN VERCINGETORIX SURRENDERS WITH THE OTHER GALLIC CHIEFS

89. Posterō diē Vercingetorīx conciliō convocātō id bellum sē suscēpisse nōn suārum necessitātum,[2] sed commūnis lībertātis causā dēmōnstrat ; et quoniam sit fortūnae cēdendum,[3] ad utramque rem sē illīs offerre, seu morte suā Rōmānīs satisfacere seu vīvum trādere velint. Mittuntur[4] dē hīs rēbus ad Caesarem lēgātī. Iubet arma trādī, prīncipēs prōdūcī. Ipse in mūnītiōne prō castrīs cōnsīdit ; eō ducēs prōdūcuntur. Vercingetorīx dēditur, arma prōiciuntur. Reservātīs Aeduīs atque Arvernīs, sī per eōs cīvitātēs recuperāre posset, ex reliquīs captīvīs tōtī exercituī capita singula **praedae** nōmine **distribuit**.

CÆSAR RESTORES PEACE IN GAUL AND DISTRIBUTES HIS FORCES THROUGHOUT THE COUNTRY

90. Hīs rēbus cōnfectīs in Aeduōs proficīscitur ; cīvitātem recipit. Eō lēgātī ab Arvernīs missī quae imperāret sē factūrōs pollicentur. Imperat magnum numerum obsidum. Legiōnēs in hīberna mittit.

dēleō, 2, **lēvī, lētus,** *destroy*	**recuperō,** 1, *recover*
vīvus, a, um, *living*	

---

[1] **quod:** *so that* (literally, *as to which*).   [2] **necessitātum:** English derivative ?   [3] **cēdendum:** impersonal.   [4] **mittuntur,** etc.: observe the inversion of the usual order of words.

Plutarch says that Vercingetorix put on his finest armor and upon his war horse came forth from the town. After riding around Cæsar several times as he sat in his tribunal, he dismounted, took off his armor, and seated himself at Cæsar's feet. He sat there in silence till Cæsar ordered him to be removed and kept for his triumph in Rome. There he was led in the triumphal procession and afterwards put to death in prison.

Captīvōrum circiter vīgintī mīlia Aeduīs Arvernīsque reddit. Titum
Labiēnum cum duābus legiōnibus et equitātū in Sēquanōs pro-
ficīscī iubet; huic Mārcum Semprōnium Rutilum attribuit. Gāium
Fabium lēgātum et Lūcium Minucium Basilum cum legiōnibus
duābus in Rēmīs collocat, nē quam ā fīnitimīs Bellovacīs calamitātem
accipiant. Gāium Antistium Rēgīnum in Ambivaretōs, Titum
Sextium in Biturīgēs, Gāium Canīnium Rebilum in Rutēnōs cum
singulīs legiōnibus mittit. Quīntum Tullium Cicerōnem et Pūblium
Sulpicium Cavillōnī[1] et Matiscōne[1] in Aeduīs ad Ararim reī frū-
mentāriae causā collocat. Ipse Bibracte hiemāre cōnstituit. Hīs
rēbus ex Caesaris litterīs cognitīs Rōmae diērum vīgintī supplicātiō
redditur.

attribuō, 3, uī, ūtus, *assign*   supplicātiō, ōnis, f., *thanksgiving*

[1] Cavillōnī, Matiscōne: *Cavillonum* and *Matisco*, towns of the Aedui.

ANNOUNCEMENTS

TWO LATIN PLAYS

By Susan Paxson, Teacher of Latin and German, High School, Omaha, Nebr.

12mo, cloth, xii + 39 pages, 45 cents

❆ "A Roman School" and "A Roman Wedding" are the only dramatizations in Latin which are in any way suitable for reproduction in the high schools. They were written by the author for the purpose of creating a new interest in the study of the classics among secondary pupils, and, as given already in several schools, have proved an effective stimulus to the class work.

❆ The plays give in turn a picture of school life in the days of Cæsar and Cicero, and again, of a high-class Roman wedding in the same period.

❆ The greatest care has been taken to make the detail authentic and the descriptions true to life. The diction is accurately classic, and there is plenty of humor and action.

❆ As a means of producing a genuine appreciation of Roman life and customs, and of making real the character of Latin literature, the book has unusual educational value.

RECENT LATIN BOOKS

LATIN FOR BEGINNERS
By Benjamin L. D'Ooge, Professor of Latin in Michigan State Normal College. 12mo, cloth, 348 pages, illustrated, with four colored plates and map in color, $1.50.

ESSENTIALS OF LATIN SYNTAX
By Charles Christopher Mierow, Instructor in Classics in Princeton University. 12mo, cloth, 98 pages, 90 cents.

LIVE ISSUES IN CLASSICAL STUDY
By Karl Pomeroy Harrington, Professor of the Latin Language and Literature in Wesleyan University, Middletown, Conn. 12mo, cloth, 76 pages, 75 cents.

GINN AND COMPANY Publishers

D'OOGE'S LATIN COMPOSITIONS

By BENJAMIN L. D'OOGE

Professor of Latin in the Michigan State Normal School, Ypsilanti

LATIN COMPOSITION FOR SECONDARY SCHOOLS

12mo, cloth, 131 + 190 pages, $1.00

PART I, BASED ON CÆSAR'S "GALLIC WAR." 12mo, cloth, xii + 131 pages, 50 cents
PARTS II AND III, BASED ON "CICERO." 12mo, cloth, 190 pages, 60 cents

PART I comprises the first volume and is to be used in connection with the first four books of "Cæsar" during the second year.

Parts II and III form the second volume. Part II, intended to accompany the work of the third year, is based on Cicero's "Manilian Law," "Catiline," I–IV, and the "Archias." Part III, designed for a review of syntax in the fourth year, consists of thirty-five lessons of miscellaneous sentences based on "Cæsar" and "Cicero," and is accompanied by a special Vocabulary.

LATIN COMPOSITION TO ACCOMPANY GREENOUGH, D'OOGE, AND DANIELL'S SECOND YEAR LATIN

12mo, cloth, x + 131 pages, 50 cents

THIS book has been especially prepared for schools using Greenough, D'Ooge, and Daniell's "Second Year Latin." With the second volume of D'Ooge's "Latin Composition for Secondary Schools" it forms a complete course for schools that precede their work in "Cicero" with "Second Year Latin" rather than with the first four books of "Cæsar."

LATIN COMPOSITION TABLET

8vo tablet, 60 pages, 15 cents

THIS composition tablet includes a system of signs for the correction of exercises. The plan lessens the labor of the teacher and gives the pupil an opportunity for more than the usual amount of Latin writing.

GINN AND COMPANY PUBLISHERS

Date Due

Demco 293-5			